

JC927 U.S. PTO
09/29/00

10-02-00

A

Please type a plus sign (+) inside this box →

PTO/SB/05 (4/98)
Approved for use through 09/30/2000. OMB 0651-0032

Patent and Trademark Office: U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

UTILITY PATENT APPLICATION TRANSMITTAL

(Only for new nonprovisional applications under 37 C.F.R. § 1.53(b))

Attorney Docket No. 13/068-3-D3

First Inventor or Application Identifier Montse Llinas-Brunet

Title Hepatitis C Inhibitor Tri-Peptides

Express Mail Label No. EL515660913US

JC927 U.S. PTO
09/29/00

APPLICATION ELEMENTS

See MPEP chapter 600 concerning utility patent application contents

1. * Fee Transmittal Form (e.g., PTO/SB/17)
(Submit an original and a duplicate for fee processing)
2. Specification [Total Pages 158]
(preferred arrangement set forth below)
 - Descriptive title of the Invention
 - Cross References to Related Applications
 - Statement Regarding Fed sponsored R & D
 - Reference to Microfiche Appendix
 - Background of the Invention
 - Brief Summary of the Invention
 - Brief Description of the Drawings (if filed)
 - Detailed Description
 - Claim(s)
 - Abstract of the Disclosure
3. Drawing(s) (35 U.S.C. 113) [Total Sheets]
4. Oath or Declaration [Total Pages 5]
 - a. Newly executed (original or copy)
 - b. Copy from a prior application (37 C.F.R. § 1.63(d))
(for continuation/divisional with Box 16 completed)
 - i. DELETION OF INVENTOR(S)
Signed statement attached deleting inventor(s) named in the prior application, see 37 C.F.R. §§ 1.63(d)(2) and 1.33(b).

***NOTE FOR ITEMS 1 & 13: IN ORDER TO BE ENTITLED TO PAY SMALL ENTITY FEES, A SMALL ENTITY STATEMENT IS REQUIRED (37 C.F.R. § 1.27), EXCEPT IF ONE FILED IN A PRIOR APPLICATION IS RELIED UPON (37 C.F.R. § 1.28).**

ADDRESS TO: Assistant Commissioner for Patents
Box Patent Application
Washington, DC 20231

5. Microfiche Computer Program (Appendix)
6. Nucleotide and/or Amino Acid Sequence Submission
(if applicable, all necessary)
 - a. Computer Readable Copy
 - b. Paper Copy (identical to computer copy)
 - c. Statement verifying identity of above copies

ACCOMPANYING APPLICATION PARTS

7. Assignment Papers (cover sheet & document(s))
8. 37 C.F.R. § 3.73(b) Statement [Power of Attorney]
(when there is an assignee)
9. English Translation Document (if applicable)
10. Information Disclosure Statement (IDS)/PTO-1449 [Copies of IDS Citations]
11. Preliminary Amendment
12. Return Receipt Postcard (MPEP 503)
(Should be specifically itemized)
13. * Small Entity Statement(s) [Status still proper and desired (PTO/SB/09-12)]
14. Certified Copy of Priority Document(s)
(if foreign priority is claimed)
15. Other:

16. If a CONTINUING APPLICATION, check appropriate box, and supply the requisite information below and in a preliminary amendment:

Continuation Divisional Continuation-in-part (CIP) of prior application No: 09/368,866

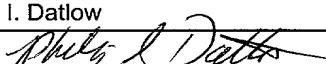
Prior application information: Examiner J. Oswecki Group / Art Unit: 1626

For CONTINUATION or DIVISIONAL APPS only: The entire disclosure of the prior application, from which an oath or declaration is supplied under Box 4b, is considered a part of the disclosure of the accompanying continuation or divisional application and is hereby incorporated by reference. The incorporation can only be relied upon when a portion has been inadvertently omitted from the submitted application parts.

17. CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS

Customer Number or Bar Code Label 000023703
(Insert Customer No. or Attach bar code label here) or Correspondence address below

Name	Dr. Robert Raymond Boehringer Ingelheim Corporation				
Address	900 Ridgebury Road PO Box 368				
City	Ridgefield	State	CT	Zip Code	06877
Country	US	Telephone	203/798-4864	Fax	203/798-4408

Name (Print/Type)	Philip I. Datlow	Registration No. (Attorney/Agent)	41,482
Signature			Date 09/29/00

Burden Hour Statement: This form is estimated to take 0.2 hours to complete. Time will vary depending upon the needs of the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you are required to complete this form should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20231. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Box Patent Application, Washington, DC 20231.

U.S. PTO
09/675398
09/29/00

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

FEE TRANSMITTAL

for FY 2000

Patent fees are subject to annual revision.

Small Entity payments must be supported by a small entity statement, otherwise large entity fees must be paid. See Forms PTO/SB/09-12. See 37 C.F.R. §§ 1.27 and 1.28.

TOTAL AMOUNT OF PAYMENT (\$ 1,562.00)

Complete if Known

Application Number	To Be Accorded
Filing Date	09/29/00
First Named Inventor	Montse Llinas-Brunet
Examiner Name	J. Oswecki
Group / Art Unit	1626
Attorney Docket No.	13/068-3-D3

METHOD OF PAYMENT (check one)

1. The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge indicated fees and credit any overpayments to:

Deposit Account Number **02-2955**

Deposit Account Name _____

Charge Any Additional Fee Required Under 37 CFR §§ 1.16 and 1.17

2. Payment Enclosed:

Check Money Order Other

FEE CALCULATION

1. BASIC FILING FEE

Large Entity Small Entity

Fee Code (\$)	Fee Code (\$)	Fee Description	Fee Paid
101	690	201 345 Utility filing fee	690.00
106	310	206 155 Design filing fee	
107	480	207 240 Plant filing fee	
108	690	208 345 Reissue filing fee	
114	150	214 75 Provisional filing fee	
SUBTOTAL (1)		(\$)	690.00

2. EXTRA CLAIM FEES

Total Claims	Extra Claims	Fee from below	Fee Paid
54	-20** = 34	x 18.00	= 612.00
Independent Claims	2 - 3** = 0	x 78.00	= 0.00
Multiple Dependent		x 260.00	= 260.00

**** or number previously paid, if greater; For Reissues, see below**

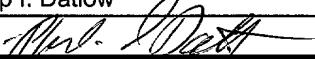
Large Entity Small Entity

Fee Code (\$)	Fee Code (\$)	Fee Description
103	18	203 9 Claims in excess of 20
102	78	202 39 Independent claims in excess of 3
104	260	204 130 Multiple dependent claim, if not paid
109	78	209 39 ** Reissue independent claims over original patent
110	18	210 9 ** Reissue claims in excess of 20 and over original patent
SUBTOTAL (2)		(\$)
		872.00

3. ADDITIONAL FEES

Large Entity	Small Entity	Fee Code (\$)	Fee Code (\$)	Fee Description	Fee Paid
105	130	205	65	Surcharge - late filing fee or oath	
127	50	227	25	Surcharge - late provisional filing fee or cover sheet	
139	130	139	130	Non-English specification	
147	2,520	147	2,520	For filing a request for reexamination	
112	920*	112	920*	Requesting publication of SIR prior to Examiner action	
113	1,840*	113	1,840*	Requesting publication of SIR after Examiner action	
115	110	215	55	Extension for reply within first month	
116	380	216	190	Extension for reply within second month	
117	870	217	435	Extension for reply within third month	
118	1,360	218	680	Extension for reply within fourth month	
128	1,850	228	925	Extension for reply within fifth month	
119	300	219	150	Notice of Appeal	
120	300	220	150	Filing a brief in support of an appeal	
121	260	221	130	Request for oral hearing	
138	1,510	138	1,510	Petition to institute a public use proceeding	
140	110	240	55	Petition to revive - unavoidable	
141	1,210	241	605	Petition to revive - unintentional	
142	1,210	242	605	Utility issue fee (or reissue)	
143	430	243	215	Design issue fee	
144	580	244	290	Plant issue fee	
122	130	122	130	Petitions to the Commissioner	
123	50	123	50	Petitions related to provisional applications	
126	240	126	240	Submission of Information Disclosure Stmt	
581	40	581	40	Recording each patent assignment per property (times number of properties)	
146	690	246	345	Filing a submission after final rejection (37 CFR § 1.129(a))	
149	690	249	345	For each additional invention to be examined (37 CFR § 1.129(b))	
Other fee (specify) _____					
Other fee (specify) _____					
SUBTOTAL (2)		(\$)	872.00	SUBTOTAL (3)	
Reduced by Basic Filing Fee Paid					

SUBMITTED BY

Name (Print/Type)	Philip I. Datlow	Registration No. (Attorney/Agent)	41,482	Telephone	203/798-4542
Signature				Date	09/29/00

WARNING:

Information on this form may become public. Credit card information should not be included on this form. Provide credit card information and authorization on PTO-2038.

Burden Hour Statement: This form is estimated to take 0.2 hours to complete. Time will vary depending upon the needs of the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you are required to complete this form should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20231. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, DC 20231.

PATENT APPLICATION

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re application of: Llinas-Brunet, M. et al

Appln. No. (to be accorded) Atty. Docket No. 13/068-3-D3

Filed: Group Art Unit: 1626

For: Hepatitis C Inhibitor Tri-Peptides Examiner: Oswecki, J.

PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT

Assistant Commissioner for Patents
Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

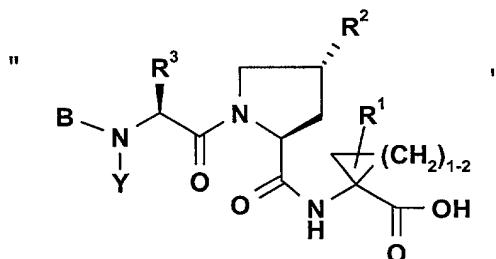
Prior to examination of the above-identified application, please amend the application as follows:

IN THE SPECIFICATION:

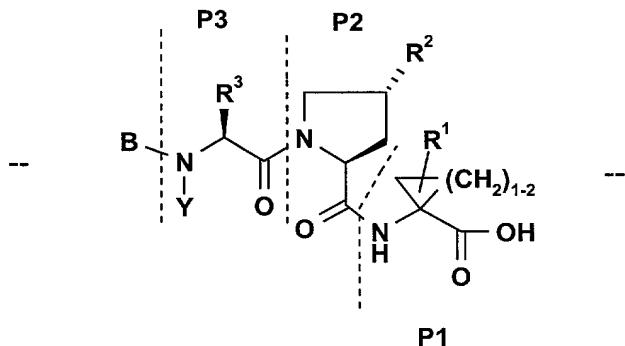
At page 1, after the title and before line 1, add --This application is a divisional of U.S. Application No. 09/368,866, filed on August 5, 1999, which claims the benefit of U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/095,931, filed August 10, 1998, and U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/132,386, filed May 4, 1999. -

PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT
Docket No. 13/068-3-D3

At page 4, lines 13-14, delete the following structure:



and insert the following:



At the following locations, delete "R₂" and insert --R²--:

Page 5, line 14;

PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT
Docket No. 13/068-3-D3

Page 17, lines 7 and 26;
Page 18, lines 2, 4, 5, 8;
Page 19, line 7;
Page 23, lines 16, 26, 28;
Page 25, lines 27, 29;
Page 26, line 11;
Page 37, line 16 (in the structure);
Page 38, lines 1 and 2 (in the structures).

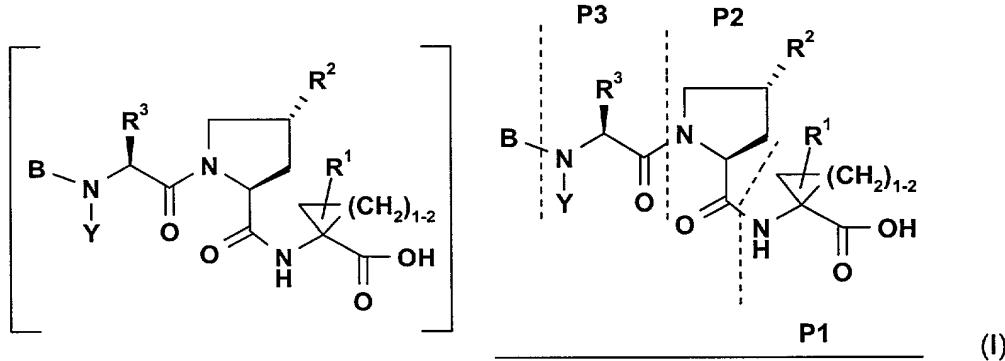
At the following locations, delete “R₁” and insert --R¹--:

Page 19, lines 16, 19, 20;
Page 20, lines 1 (in the structure), 10, 12 (in the structures), 14, 16 (in the structures),
and line 18;
Page 21, lines 1, 2 (in the structures), 3, 4, 11, 15, 17 (in the structure), 18;
Page 24, lines 2, 4 (in the structures);
Page 26, line 6 (in the structures);
Page 43, lines 1 (in the structures), 2, 10 (in the structures), 11, 21 (in the structures);
Page 44, lines 1, line 9 (in the structures), 10.

PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT
Docket No. 13/068-3-D3

IN THE CLAIMS:

1. (Amended) A compound of formula (I) comprising [the scope of the invention are] racemates, diastereoisomers and optical isomers of



wherein **B** is H, a C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl; Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, all of which optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; C₁₋₆ alkanoyl; hydroxy; hydroxyalkyl; halo; haloalkyl; nitro; cyano; cyanoalkyl; amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; amido; or (lower alkyl)amide; or **B** is an acyl derivative of formula R₄-C(O)-; a carboxyl of formula R₄-O-C(O)-; an amide of formula R₄-N(R₅)-C(O)-; a thioamide of formula R₄-N(R₅)-C(S)-; or a sulfonyl of formula R₄-SO₂ wherein

R₄ is (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido, or (lower alkyl) amide; (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkoxy, or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with hydroxy, carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido, or (lower alkyl) amide; (iii) amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; amido; or (lower alkyl)amide; (iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or (v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl) amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;

R₅ is H or C₁₋₆ alkyl; with the proviso that when **R**₄ is an amide or a thioamide, **R**₄ is not (ii) a

PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT
Docket No. 13/068-3-D3

cycloalkoxy;

Y is H or C₁₋₆ alkyl;

R³ is C₁₋₈ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₁₋₆ thioalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl;

[**R**₂] **R**² is CH₂-**R**₂₀, NH-**R**₂₀, O-**R**₂₀ or S-**R**₂₀, wherein [**R**₂₀] is a saturated or unsaturated C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₄₋₁₀ (alkylcycloalkyl), all of which being optionally mono-, di- or tri-substituted with **R**₂₁,

or **R**₂₀ is a C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₄ aralkyl, all optionally mono-, di- or tri-substituted with **R**₂₁,

or] **R**₂₀ is [Het or (lower alkyl)-Het] pyrimidinyl, quinazolinyl, (lower alkyl)-pyrimidinyl or (lower alkyl)-quinazolinyl, [both] each optionally mono-, di- or tri-substituted with **R**₂₁,

wherein each **R**₂₁ is independently C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; lower thioalkyl; sulfonyl; NO₂; OH; SH; halo; haloalkyl; amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₄ aralkyl, Het or (lower alkyl)-Het; amido optionally mono-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₄ aralkyl, Het or (lower alkyl)-Het; carboxyl; carboxy(lower alkyl); C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₄ aralkyl or Het, said aryl, aralkyl or Het being optionally substituted with **R**₂₂;

wherein **R**₂₂ is C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; sulfonyl; (lower alkyl)sulfonyl; NO₂; OH; SH; halo; haloalkyl; carboxyl; amide; (lower alkyl)amide; or Het optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;

R¹ is H; C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, C₂₋₆ alkenyl, or C₂₋₆ alkynyl, all optionally substituted with halogen;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or ester thereof;

wherein "Het" is defined as a five-membered saturated or unsaturated, including aromatic, heterocycle containing from one to four heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur,
wherein said heterocycle is optionally fused to a benzene ring.

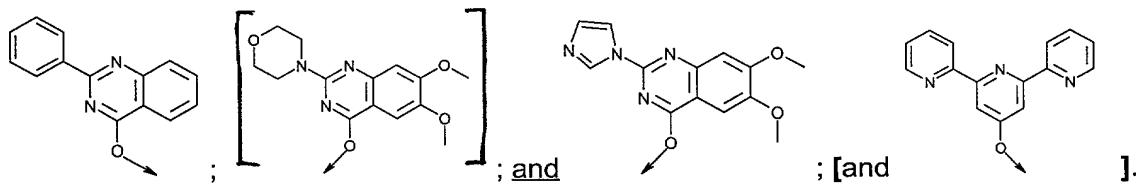
21. (amended) A compound of formula I according to claim 1, wherein [**R**₂] **R**² is S-**R**₂₀ or O-**R**₂₀ wherein **R**₂₀ is a [C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, Het or -CH₂-Het] pyrimidinyl, quinazolinyl, -CH₂-pyrimidinyl or -CH₂-quinazolinyl, all optionally mono-, di- or tri-substituted with **R**₂₁, wherein

PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT
Docket No. 13/068-3-D3

R₂₁ is C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; lower thioalkyl; amino or amido optionally mono-or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, Het or (lower alkyl)-Het; NO₂; OH; halo; trifluoromethyl; carboxyl; C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, or Het, said aryl, aralkyl or Het being optionally substituted with **R₂₂**, wherein

R₂₂ is C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; amino; mono- or di-(lower alkyl)amino; (lower alkyl)amide; sulfonylalkyl; NO₂; OH; halo; trifluoromethyl; carboxyl or Het.

25. (amended) A compound of formula I according to claim 21, wherein **[R₂] R²** is selected from the group consisting of:



Please cancel claims 26 to 35.

In the following claims, delete “R₁” and insert --R¹--:

Claim 36, line 2; Claim 38, line 1; Claim 39, line 1 and line 3 (in the structures); Claim 40, line 1 and line 3 (in the structures); Claim 42, line 1 and line 3 (in the structure); Claim 43, line 1; Claim 44, line 1.

45. (amended) A compound of formula I according to claim 1, wherein
B is a C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, nitro, cyano, cyanoalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or
Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl,

PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT
Docket No. 13/068-3-D3

hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, nitro, cyano, cyanoalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, or

B is R₄-SO₂ wherein R₄ is preferably amido; (lower alkyl)amide; C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₄ aralkyl or Het, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, or

B is an acyl derivative of formula R₄-C(O)- wherein R₄ is

- (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, hydroxy or C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;
- (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, both optionally substituted with hydroxy, carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;
- (iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;
- (v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, or

B is a carboxyl of formula R₄-O-C(O)-, wherein R₄ is

- (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amide;
- (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amide;
- (iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or
- (v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amide, or

B is an amide of formula R₄-N(R₅)-C(O)- wherein R₄ is

- (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;

PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT
Docket No. 13/068-3-D3

(ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;

(iii) amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₃ alkyl;

(iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or

(v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amide; and

R₅ is H or methyl, or

B is thioamide of formula R₄-NH-C(S)-; wherein R₄ is

(i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl or C₁₋₆ alkoxy;

(ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amino or amido;

Y is H or methyl;

R³ is C₁₋₈ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₁₋₆ thioalkyl, acetamido, C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl;

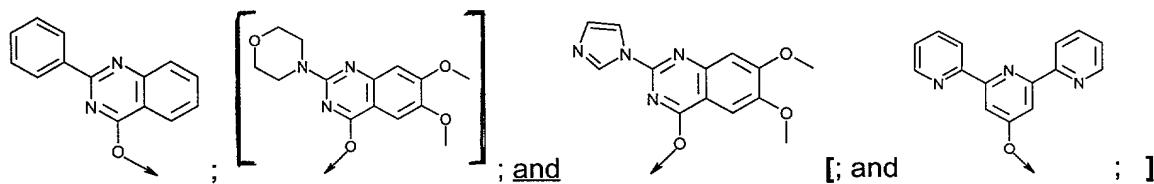
[R₂] R² is S-R₂₀ or O-R₂₀ wherein R₂₀ is [preferably a C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, Het or -CH₂-Het] pyrimidinyl, quinazolinyl, -CH₂-pyrimidinyl or -CH₂-quinazolinyl, all optionally mono-, di- or tri-substituted with R₂₁, wherein

R₂₁ is C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; lower thioalkyl; amino or amido optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, Het or (lower alkyl)-Het; NO₂; OH; halo; trifluoromethyl; carboxyl; C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, or Het, said aryl, aralkyl or Het being optionally substituted with R₂₂, wherein

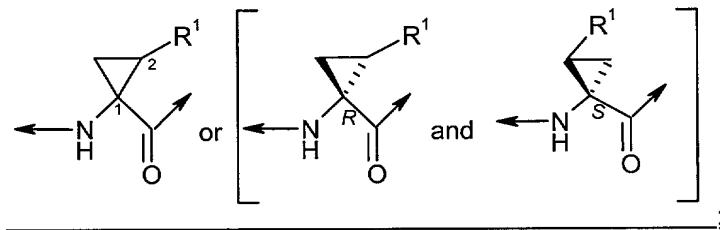
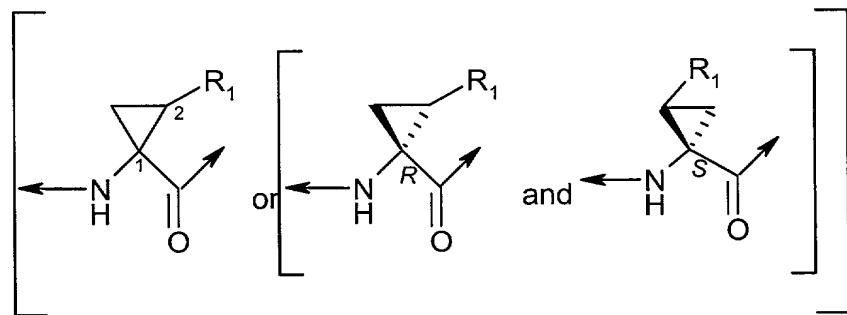
R₂₂ is C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; amino; mono- or di-(lower alkyl)amino; (lower alkyl)amide; sulfonylalkyl; NO₂; OH; halo; trifluoromethyl; carboxyl or Het; or

[R₂] R² is selected from the group consisting of:

PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT
Docket No. 13/068-3-D3



[or R_2 is 1-naphthylmethoxy; 2-naphthylmethoxy; benzyloxy, 1-naphthyoxy; 2-naphthyoxy; or quinolinoxy unsubstituted , mono- or di-substituted with R_{21} as defined above]; and the P1 segment is a cyclopropyl ring, both optionally substituted with $[R_1]$ R^1 , wherein R^1 is C₁₋₃ alkyl, C₃₋₅ cycloalkyl, or C₂₋₄ alkenyl optionally substituted with halo, and said $[R_1]$ R^1 at carbon 2 is orientated *syn* to the carbonyl at position 1, represented by the radical:

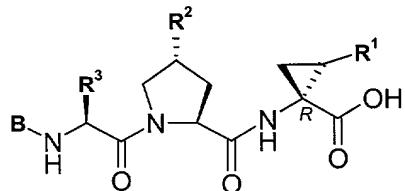


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or ester thereof.

Please cancel claims 46 to 51.

PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT
Docket No. 13/068-3-D3

52. (amended) A compound according to claim 45 represented by the formula:

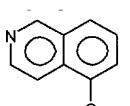
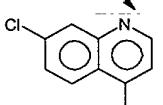
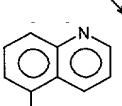
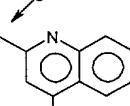
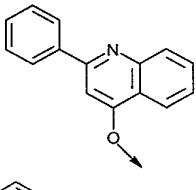
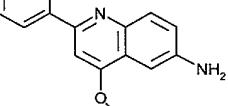
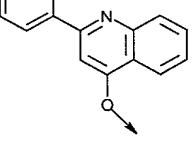
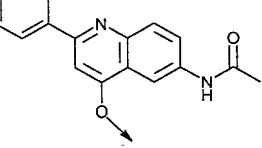


wherein **B**, **[R₃, R₂, R₁] R³, R², R¹** are as defined below:

Table 3 Cpd #	B	[R ₃]R ³	[R ₂]R ²	[R ₁] R ¹ <i>syn to</i> <i>carboxyl</i>
[301]	Boc	cHex	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	ethyl ;
302		iPr	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	ethyl ;
303		cHex	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	ethyl ;
304	Boc	cHex		ethyl ;
305	Boc	cHex	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	vinyl ;
306	Boc	cHex		vinyl ;
307	Boc	cHex		vinyl ;
308	Boc	cHex		vinyl ;
309	Boc	cHex		vinyl ;

PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT
Docket No. 13/068-3-D3

Table 3
Cpd #

	B	[R₃]R³	[R₂]R²	[R₁]R¹ <i>syn to</i> <i>carboxyl</i> <i>vinyl</i>	
310	Boc	cHex		;	
311	Boc	cHex		vinyl	;
312	Boc	cHex		vinyl	;
313	Boc	cHex		vinyl	;
314	Boc	cHex		vinyl	;
315	Boc	cHex		vinyl	;
316	Acetyl	cHex		vinyl	;
317	Boc	cHex		vinyl	;

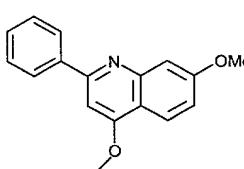
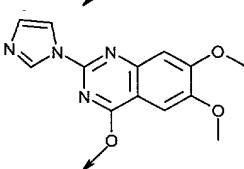
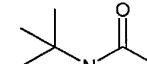
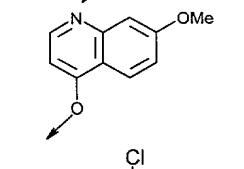
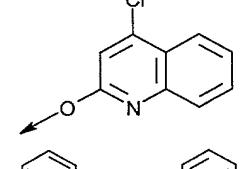
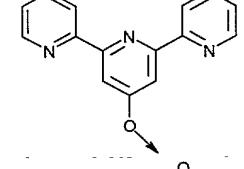
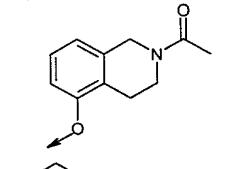
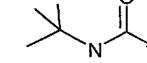
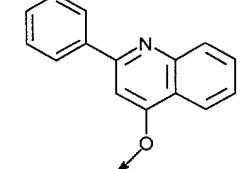
PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT
Docket No. 13/068-3-D3

Table 3
Cpd #

	B	[R₃]R³	[R₂]R²	[R₁]R¹ <i>syn to</i> <i>carboxyl</i>	;
318	CF ₃ -C(O)-	<i>i</i> -Pr		vinyl	
319		cHex		vinyl	
320		cHex		vinyl	
321	Boc	<i>t</i> -Bu		vinyl	
[322]	Boc	<i>t</i> -Bu		vinyl	
323	Boc	<i>t</i> -Bu			
[324]	Boc	<i>t</i> -Bu		vinyl	

PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT
Docket No. 13/068-3-D3

Table 3
Cpd #

	B	[R₃]R³	[R₂]R²	[R₁] R¹ syn to carboxyl	
325	Boc	<i>t</i> -Bu			;]
326	Boc	<i>t</i> -Bu		vinyl	;
[327]		<i>t</i> -Bu		vinyl	;
328	Boc	<i>t</i> -Bu		vinyl	;
329	Boc	<i>t</i> -Bu		vinyl	;
330	Boc	<i>t</i> -Bu		vinyl	;
331		<i>t</i> -Bu		vinyl	;

PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT
Docket No. 13/068-3-D3

Table 3
Cpd #

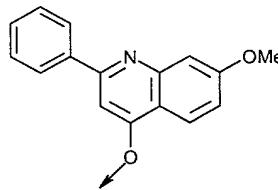
332

B

[R₃]R³

t-Bu

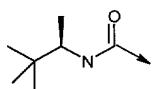
[R₂]R²



[R₁] R¹
syn to
carboxyl
ethyl

;

333



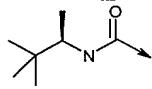
t-Bu



vinyl

;

and
334



t-Bu



vinyl

].

53. (amended) A compound according to claim 52, selected from the group consisting of compound #: [307,314, 317,] 319, 321, [324, 325,] and 326 [, 327, 329, 331, 332, 333, and 334].

Please cancel claims 54 to 65.

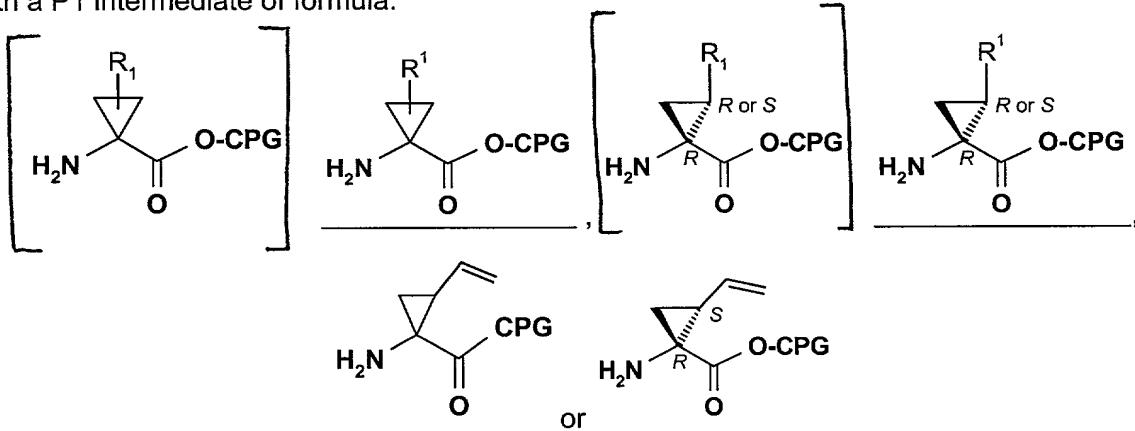
In Claims 67, 68, 69 and 70, line 1 of each claim, delete "by" and insert --comprising--.

73. (amended) A process for the preparation of a peptide analog of formula (I) according to claim 1 wherein P1 is a substituted aminocyclopropyl carboxylic acid residue, comprising the

PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT
Docket No. 13/068-3-D3

step of:

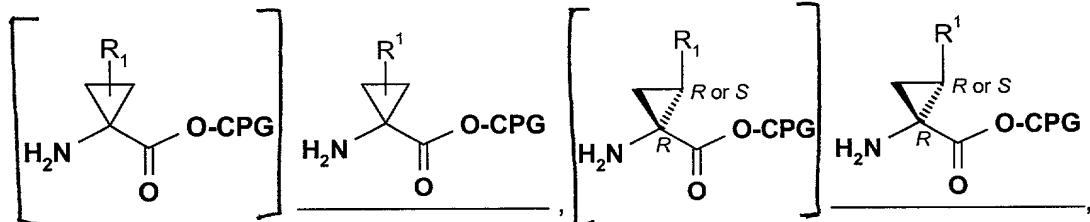
coupling a peptide selected from the group consisting of: APG-P3-P2; or APG-P2;
with a P1 intermediate of formula:



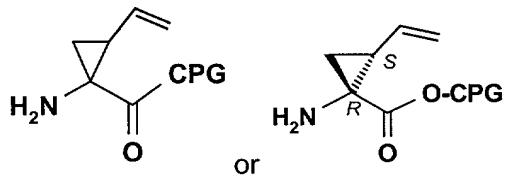
wherein [R₁R¹] is C₁₋₆ alkyl, cycloalkyl or C₂₋₆ alkenyl, all optionally substituted with halogen,
CPG is a carboxyl protecting group and APG is an amino protecting group and P3 and P2 are
as defined above.

74. (amended) A process for the preparation of: [1] a serine protease inhibitor peptide analog, or 2] a [HCV NS3 protease inhibitor] peptide analog of formula (I) according to claim 1, this process comprising the step of:

coupling a [(]suitably protected[)] amino acid, peptide or peptide fragment with a P1 intermediate of formula:

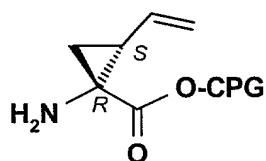


PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT
Docket No. 13/068-3-D3



wherein $[R_1]R^1$ is C_{1-6} alkyl, cycloalkyl or C_{2-6} alkenyl, all optionally substituted with halogen, and CPG is a carboxyl protecting group.

75. (amended) A process for the preparation of: [1) a protease inhibitor peptide analog, or 2)] a [serine protease inhibitor] peptide analog of formula (I) according to claim 1, this process comprising the step of:
coupling a [(]suitably protected[)] amino acid, peptide or peptide fragment with [an] a P1 intermediate of formula:



wherein CPG is a carboxyl protecting group.

Please cancel claims 76 to 79 and claims 81 to 83, without prejudice.

84. (amended) [Use of] Method of preparing [an anti-hepatitis C virally effective amount of the compound of formula I according to claim 1, or a therapeutically acceptable salt or ester thereof for the preparation of] a composition for treating a hepatitis C viral infection in a mammal comprising combining an anti-hepatitis C virally effective amount of the compound of formula I according to claim 1, or a therapeutically acceptable salt or ester thereof, with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier medium or auxiliary agent.

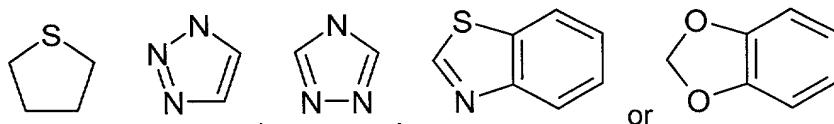
PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT
Docket No. 13/068-3-D3

85. (amended) [Use of] Method of preparing [a hepatitis C viral NS3 protease inhibiting amount of the compound of formula I according to claim 1, or a therapeutically acceptable salt or ester thereof for the preparation of] a composition for inhibiting the replication of hepatitis C virus comprising combining a hepatitis C viral NS3 protease inhibiting amount of the compound of formula I according to claim 1, or a therapeutically acceptable salt or ester thereof, with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier medium or auxiliary agent.

86. (amended) [Use of] Method of preparing [an anti-hepatitis C virally effective amount of a combination of the compound of formula I according to claim 1, or a therapeutically acceptable salt or ester thereof, and an interferon for the preparation of] a composition for treating a hepatitis C viral infection in a mammal comprising combining an anti-hepatitis C virally effective amount of a combination of the compound of formula I according to claim 1, or a therapeutically acceptable salt or ester thereof, and an interferon with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier medium or auxiliary agent.

Please add the following new claim 87:

-- 87. A compound of formula (I) according to claim 1, wherein each Het group is independently selected from the group consisting of pyrrolidine, tetrahydrofuran, thiazolidine, pyrrole, 1,4-dioxane, indole, or any of the following heterocycles:



REMARKS

The specification and claim 1 have been amended to designate the P1, P2, P3 portions of the

PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT
Docket No. 13/068-3-D3

tripeptides of formula (I) of the present invention, support being found throughout the application as filed, e.g., the synthetic methods at pages 30-34 and in claims 37, 46-47 and 73-74. This also ensures consistency within the claims.

This application is a divisional application of parent Application No. 09/368,866, filed on August 5, 1999. The claims have been amended to be directed to the non-elected subject matter of Group III set forth in the Restriction Requirement dated July 26, 2000, in the parent application. In this respect, the R₂₀ group “Het or (lower alkyl)-Het” has been amended to pyrimidinyl, quinazolinyl, (lower alkyl)-pyrimidinyl or (lower alkyl)-quinazolinyl, support being found in the pyrimidine and quinazoline Het groups found at page 10, line 12, page 18, lines 1-10, and in the numerous examples throughout the application as filed. The quinazolinyl group corresponds to the “benzopyridinyl” group identified by the Examiner in the Restriction Requirement.

In addition, the remaining “Het” groups in the claims are now defined as “a five-membered saturated or unsaturated, including aromatic, heterocycle containing from one to four heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur, wherein said heterocycle is optionally fused to a benzene ring”, support being found in the application as filed at page 10, lines 6-17, as well as in the numerous examples throughout the application as filed. A new claim 87 has been added to claim certain heterocycles that are listed at page 10, lines 10-17.

Process of preparation claims 73 to 75 have been amended to recite that the product of the claimed processes is the peptide analog compound of formula (I) according to claim 1. Since the process claims now depend from product claim 1 with respect to the product of each claimed process, Applicants respectfully submit that these process claims are entitled to be examined together with the product claims under the principles of rejoinder. See MPEP § 821.04.

PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT
Docket No. 13/068-3-D3

Claims 84-86 have been amended to conform with U.S. practice. Other amendments have been made to correct certain informalities and improve consistency within the claims.

An examination on the merits is respectfully requested.

If any points remain at issue which can best be resolved by way of a telephonic or personal interview, the Examiner is kindly requested to contact the undersigned attorney at the local telephone number listed below.

Respectfully submitted,


Philip I. Datlow
Reg. No. 41,482

Patent Department
Boehringer Ingelheim Corp.
900 Ridgebury Road
P.O. Box 368
Ridgefield, CT 06877
Tel: (203) 798-4542
Date: September 29, 2000

Certificate of Mailing
I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the U.S. Postal Service with sufficient postage as first class mail in an envelope addressed to:
Assistant Commissioner For Patents
Washington, DC 20231
on September 29, 2000


Philip I. Datlow

HEPATITIS C INHIBITOR TRI-PEPTIDES

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to compounds, process for their synthesis, compositions and methods for the treatment of hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection. In particular, the present invention provides novel peptide analogs, pharmaceutical compositions containing such analogs and methods for using these analogs in the treatment of HCV infection. The present invention also provides processes and intermediates for the synthesis of these peptide analogs.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

10 Hepatitis C virus (HCV) is the major etiological agent of post-transfusion and community-acquired non-A non-B hepatitis worldwide. It is estimated that over 150 million people worldwide are infected by the virus. A high percentage of carriers become chronically infected and many progress to chronic liver disease, so-called chronic hepatitis C. This group is in turn at high risk for serious liver disease such 15 as liver cirrhosis, hepatocellular carcinoma and terminal liver disease leading to death.

The mechanism by which HCV establishes viral persistence and causes a high rate of chronic liver disease has not been thoroughly elucidated. It is not known how HCV interacts with and evades the host immune system. In addition, the roles of 20 cellular and humoral immune responses in protection against HCV infection and disease have yet to be established. Immunoglobulins have been reported for prophylaxis of transfusion-associated viral hepatitis, however, the Center for Disease Control does not presently recommend immunoglobulins treatment for this purpose. The lack of an effective protective immune response is hampering the 25 development of a vaccine or adequate post-exposure prophylaxis measures, so in the near-term, hopes are firmly pinned on antiviral interventions.

Various clinical studies have been conducted with the goal of identifying 30 pharmaceutical agents capable of effectively treating HCV infection in patients afflicted with chronic hepatitis C. These studies have involved the use of interferon-alpha, alone and in combination with other antiviral agents. Such studies have shown that a substantial number of the participants do not respond to these therapies, and of those that do respond favorably, a large proportion were found to relapse after termination of treatment.

Until recently, interferon (IFN) was the only available therapy of proven benefit approved in the clinic for patients with chronic hepatitis C. However the sustained response rate is low, and interferon treatment also induces severe side-effects (i.e. retinopathy, thyroiditis, acute pancreatitis, depression) that diminish the quality of life

5 of treated patients. Recently, interferon in combination with ribavirin has been approved for patients non-responsive to IFN alone. However, the side effects caused by IFN are not alleviated with this combination therapy.

Therefore, a need exists for the development of effective antiviral agents for treatment of HCV infection that overcomes the limitations of existing pharmaceutical

10 therapies.

HCV is an enveloped positive strand RNA virus in the Flaviviridae family. The single strand HCV RNA genome is approximately 9500 nucleotides in length and has a single open reading frame (ORF) encoding a single large polyprotein of about 3000 amino acids. In infected cells, this polyprotein is cleaved at multiple sites by cellular

15 and viral proteases to produce the structural and non-structural (NS) proteins. In the case of HCV, the generation of mature nonstructural proteins (NS2, NS3, NS4A, NS4B, NS5A, and NS5B) is effected by two viral proteases. The first one, as yet poorly characterized, cleaves at the NS2-NS3 junction; the second one is a serine protease contained within the N-terminal region of NS3 (henceforth referred to as

20 NS3 protease) and mediates all the subsequent cleavages downstream of NS3, both in *cis*, at the NS3-NS4A cleavage site, and in *trans*, for the remaining NS4A-NS4B, NS4B-NS5A, NS5A-NS5B sites. The NS4A protein appears to serve multiple functions, acting as a cofactor for the NS3 protease and possibly assisting in the membrane localization of NS3 and other viral replicase components. The

25 complex formation of the NS3 protein with NS4A seems necessary to the processing events, enhancing the proteolytic efficiency at all of the sites. The NS3 protein also exhibits nucleoside triphosphatase and RNA helicase activities. NS5B is a RNA-dependent RNA polymerase that is involved in the replication of HCV. A general strategy for the development of antiviral agents is to inactivate virally

30 encoded enzymes that are essential for the replication of the virus. In this vein, patent application WO 97/06804 describes the (-) enantiomer of the nucleoside analogue cytosine-1,3-oxathiolane (also known as 3TC) as active against HCV. This compound, although reported as safe in previous clinical trials against HIV and HBV, has yet to be clinically proven active against HCV and its mechanism of

action against the virus has yet to be reported.

Intense efforts to discover compounds which inhibit the NS3 protease or RNA helicase of HCV have led to the following disclosures:

- US patent 5,633,388 describes heterocyclic-substituted carboxamides and analogues as being active against HCV. These compounds are directed against the helicase activity of the NS3 protein of the virus but clinical tests have not yet been reported.
- A phenanthrenequinone has been reported by Chu et al., (Tet. Lett., (1996), 7229-7232) to have activity against the HCV NS3 protease *in vitro*. No further development on this compound has been reported.
- A paper presented at the Ninth International Conference on Antiviral Research, Urabandai, Fukushima, Japan (1996) (Antiviral Research, (1996), 30, 1, A23 (abstract 19)) reports thiazolidine derivatives to be inhibitory to the HCV protease.
- Several studies have reported compounds inhibitory to other serine proteases, such as human leukocyte elastase. One family of these compounds is reported in WO 95/33764 (Hoechst Marion Roussel, 1995). The peptides disclosed in this application are morpholinylcarbonyl-benzoyl-peptide analogues that are structurally different from the peptides of the present invention.
- WO 98/17679 from Vertex Pharmaceuticals Inc. discloses inhibitors of serine protease, particularly, Hepatitis C virus NS3 protease. These inhibitors are peptide analogues based on the NS5A/5B natural substrate. Although several tripeptides are disclosed, all of these peptide analogues contain C-terminal activated carbonyl function as an essential feature. These analogues were also reported to be active against other serine protease and are therefore not specific for HCV NS3 protease.
- Hoffman LaRoche has also reported hexapeptides that are proteinase inhibitors useful as antiviral agents for the treatment of HCV infection. These peptides contain an aldehyde or a boronic acid at the C-terminus.
- Steinkühler *et al.* and Ingallinella *et al.* have published on NS4A-4B product inhibition (Biochemistry (1998), 37, 8899-8905 and 8906-8914). However, the peptides and peptide analogues presented do not include nor do they lead to the design of the peptides of the present invention.

One advantage of the present invention is that it provides tripeptides that are

inhibitory to the NS3 protease of the hepatitis C virus.

A further advantage of one aspect of the present invention resides in the fact that these peptides specifically inhibit the NS3 protease and do not show significant inhibitory activity at concentrations up to 300 μM against other serine proteases

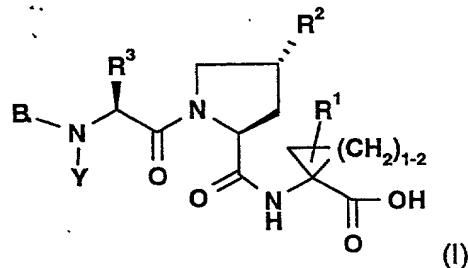
5 such as human leukocyte elastase (HLE), porcine pancreatic elastase (PPE), or bovine pancreatic chymotrypsin, or cysteine proteases such as human liver cathepsin B (Cat B).

A further advantage of the present invention is that it provides small peptides of low molecular weight that may be capable of penetrating cell membranes and may be

10 active in cell culture and *in vivo* with good pharmacokinetic profile.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

Included in the scope of the invention are racemates, diastereoisomers and optical isomers of a compound of formula (I):



15 wherein **B** is H, a C_{6} or C_{10} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl; Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, all of which optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; C_{1-6} alkoxy; C_{1-6} alkanoyl; hydroxy; hydroxyalkyl; halo; haloalkyl; nitro; cyano; cyanoalkyl; amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; amido; or (lower alkyl)amide;

or **B** is an acyl derivative of formula $\text{R}_4\text{-C(O)-}$; a carboxyl of formula $\text{R}_4\text{-O-C(O)-}$; an amide of formula $\text{R}_4\text{-N(R}_5\text{)-C(O)-}$; a thioamide of formula $\text{R}_4\text{-N(R}_5\text{)-C(S)-}$; or a sulfonyl of formula $\text{R}_4\text{-SO}_2$ wherein

20 R_4 is (i) C_{1-10} alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkoxy, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, amido, or (lower alkyl) amide;

(ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl, C_{3-7} cycloalkoxy, or C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with hydroxy, carboxyl, (C_{1-6} alkoxy)carbonyl, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, amido, or (lower alkyl) amide;

(iii) amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; amido; or (lower alkyl)amide;

25

(iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or

(v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl) amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;

R₅ is H or C₁₋₆ alkyl;

with the proviso that when R₄ is an amide or a thioamide, R₄ is not (ii) a cycloalkoxy; and

Y is H or C₁₋₆ alkyl;

R³ is C₁₋₈ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₁₋₆ thioalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl;

R₂ is CH₂-R₂₀, NH-R₂₀, O-R₂₀ or S-R₂₀, wherein R₂₀ is a saturated or unsaturated C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₄₋₁₀ (alkylcycloalkyl), all of which being optionally mono-, di- or tri-substituted with R₂₁,

or R₂₀ is a C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₄ aralkyl, all optionally mono-, di- or tri-substituted with R₂₁,

or R₂₀ is Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally mono-, di- or tri-substituted with R₂₁,

wherein each R₂₁ is independently C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; lower thioalkyl; sulfonyl; NO₂; OH; SH; halo; haloalkyl; amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₄ aralkyl, Het or (lower alkyl)-Het;

amido optionally mono-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₄ aralkyl, Het or (lower alkyl)-Het;

carboxyl; carboxy(lower alkyl); C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₄ aralkyl or Het, said aryl, aralkyl or Het being optionally substituted with R₂₂;

wherein R₂₂ is C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; sulfonyl; (lower alkyl)sulfonyl; NO₂; OH; SH; halo; haloalkyl; carboxyl; amide; (lower alkyl)amide; or Het optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl

R¹ is H, C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, C₂₋₆ alkenyl, or C₂₋₆ alkynyl, all optionally substituted with halogen;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or ester thereof.

Included within the scope of this invention is a pharmaceutical composition comprising an anti-hepatitis C virally effective amount of a compound of formula I, or a therapeutically acceptable salt or ester thereof, in admixture with a

5 pharmaceutically acceptable carrier medium or auxiliary agent.

An important aspect of the invention involves a method of treating a hepatitis C viral infection in a mammal by administering to the mammal an anti-hepatitis C virally effective amount of the compound of formula I, or a therapeutically acceptable salt or ester thereof or a composition as described above.

10 Another important aspect involves a method of inhibiting the replication of hepatitis C virus by exposing the virus to a hepatitis C viral NS3 protease inhibiting amount of the compound of formula I, or a therapeutically acceptable salt or ester thereof or a composition as described above.

15 Still another aspect involves a method of treating a hepatitis C viral infection in a mammal by administering thereto an anti-hepatitis C virally effective amount of a combination of the compound of formula I, or a therapeutically acceptable salt or ester thereof. According to one embodiment, the pharmaceutical compositions of this invention comprise an additional immunomodulatory agent. Examples of additional immunomodulatory agents include but are not limited to, α -, β -, and δ -interferons.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS

Definitions

As used herein, the following definitions apply unless otherwise noted:

With reference to the instances where (R) or (S) is used to designate the 25 configuration of a substituent, e.g. R¹ of the compound of formula I, the designation is done in the context of the compound and not in the context of the substituent alone.

The natural amino acids, with exception of glycine, contain a chiral carbon atom. Unless otherwise specifically indicated, the compounds containing natural amino acids with the L-configuration are preferred. However, applicants contemplate that 30 when specified, some amino acids of the formula I can be of either D- or L-configuration or can be mixtures of D- and L-isomers, including racemic mixtures. The designation "P1, P2 and P3" as used herein refer to the position of the amino acid residues starting from the C-terminus end of the peptide analogues and

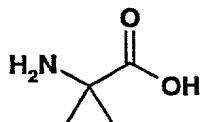
extending towards the N-terminus [i.e. P1 refers to position 1 from the C-terminus, P2: second position from the C-terminus, etc.) (see Berger A. & Schechter I., Transactions of the Royal Society London series (1970), B257, 249-264].

The abbreviations for the α -amino acids used in this application are set forth in
 5 Table A.

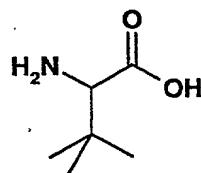
TABLE A

Amino Acid	Symbol
1-aminocyclopropyl-carboxylic acid	Acca
Alanine	Ala
Aspartic acid	Asp
Cysteine	Cys
Cyclohexylglycine (also named: 2-amino-2-cyclohexylacetic acid)	Chg
Glutamic acid	Glu
Isoleucine	Ile
Leucine	Leu
Phenylalanine	Phe
Proline	Pro
Valine	Val
<i>tert</i> -Butylglycine	Tbg

As used herein the term "1-aminocyclopropyl-carboxylic acid" (Acca) refers to a compound of formula:



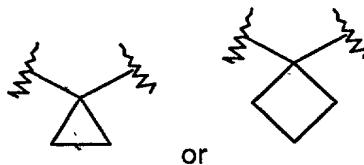
10 As used herein the term "*tert*-butylglycine" refers to a compound of formula:



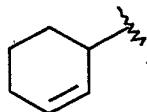
The term "residue" with reference to an amino acid or amino acid derivative means a radical derived from the corresponding α -amino acid by eliminating the hydroxyl of the carboxy group and one hydrogen of the α -amino group. For instance, the terms

Gln, Ala, Gly, Ile, Arg, Asp, Phe, Ser, Leu, Cys, Asn, Sar and Tyr represent the "residues" of L-glutamine, L-alanine, glycine, L-isoleucine, L-arginine, L-aspartic acid, L-phenylalanine, L-serine, L-leucine, L-cysteine, L-asparagine, sarcosine and L-tyrosine, respectively.

- 5 The term "side chain" with reference to an amino acid or amino acid residue means a group attached to the α -carbon atom of the α -amino acid. For example, the R-group side chain for glycine is hydrogen, for alanine it is methyl, for valine it is isopropyl. For the specific R-groups or side chains of the α -amino acids reference is made to A.L. Lehninger's text on Biochemistry (see chapter 4).
- 10 The term "halo" as used herein means a halogen substituent selected from bromo, chloro, fluoro or iodo.
-
- The term " C_{1-6} alkyl" or "(lower)alkyl" as used herein, either alone or in combination with another substituent, means acyclic, straight or branched chain alkyl substituents containing from 1 to six carbon atoms and includes, for example,
- 15 methyl, ethyl, propyl, butyl, *tert*-butyl, hexyl, 1-methylethyl, 1-methylpropyl, 2-methylpropyl, 1,1-dimethylethyl.
- The term " C_{3-7} cycloalkyl" as used herein, either alone or in combination with another substituent, means a cycloalkyl substituent containing from three to seven carbon atoms and includes cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl and
- 20 cycloheptyl. This term also includes "spiro"-cyclic group such as spiro-cyclopropyl or spiro-cyclobutyl:



The term "unsaturated cycloalkyl" includes, for example, cyclohexenyl:



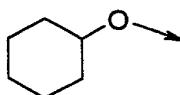
- 25 The term " C_{4-10} (alkylcycloalkyl)" as used herein means a cycloalkyl radical containing from three to seven carbon atoms linked to an alkyl radical, the linked radicals containing up to ten carbon atoms; for example, cyclopropylmethyl, cyclopentylethyl, cyclohexylimethyl, cyclohexylethyl or cycloheptylethyl.
- The term " C_{2-10} alkenyl" as used herein, either alone or in combination with another

radical, means an alkyl radical as defined above containing from 2 to 10 carbon atoms, and further containing at least one double bond. For example alkenyl includes allyl and vinyl.

5 The term "C₁₋₆ alkanoyl" as used herein, either alone or in combination with another radical, means straight or branched 1-oxoalkyl radicals containing one to six carbon atoms and includes formyl, acetyl, 1-oxopropyl (propionyl), 2-methyl-1-oxopropyl, 1-oxohexyl and the like.

10 The term "C₁₋₆ alkoxy" as used herein, either alone or in combination with another radical, means the radical -O(C₁₋₆ alkyl) wherein alkyl is as defined above containing up to six carbon atoms. Alkoxy includes methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, 1-methylethoxy, butoxy and 1,1-dimethylethoxy. The latter radical is known commonly as *tert*-butoxy.

The term "C₃₋₇ cycloalkoxy" as used herein, either alone or in combination with another radical, means a C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl group linked to an oxygen atom, such as, for example:

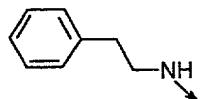


15

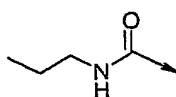
The term "C₆ or C₁₀ aryl" as used herein, either alone or in combination with another radical, means either an aromatic monocyclic group containing 6 carbon atoms or an aromatic bicyclic group containing 10 carbon atoms. For example, aryl includes phenyl, 1-naphthyl or 2-naphthyl.

20 The term "C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl" as used herein, either alone or in combination with another radical, means a C₆ or C₁₀ aryl as defined above linked to an alkyl group, wherein alkyl is as defined above containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms. C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl includes for example benzyl, butylphenyl, and 1-naphthylmethyl.

25 The term "amino aralkyl" as used herein, either alone or in combination with another radical, means an amino group substituted with a C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl group, such as, for example, the amino aralkyl:



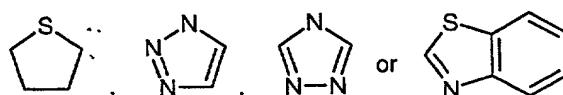
The term "(lower alkyl)amide" as used herein, either alone or in combination with another radical, means an amide mono-substituted with a C₁₋₆ alkyl, such as:



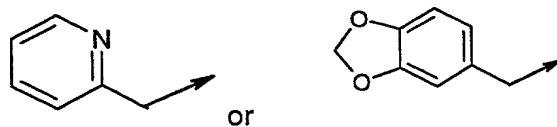
The term "carboxy(lower)alkyl" as used herein, either alone or in combination with another radical, means a carboxyl group (COOH) linked through a (lower)alkyl group as defined above and includes for example butyric acid.

The term "heterocycle" or "Het" as used herein, either alone or in combination with another radical, means a monovalent radical derived by removal of a hydrogen from a five-, six-, or seven-membered saturated or unsaturated (including aromatic) heterocycle containing from one to four heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur. Furthermore, "Het" as used herein, means a heterocycle as defined above fused to one or more other cycle, be it a heterocycle or any other cycle.

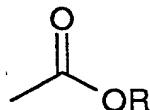
10 Examples of suitable heterocycles include: pyrrolidine, tetrahydrofuran, thiazolidine, pyrrole, thiophene, diazepine, 1H-imidazole, isoxazole, thiazole, tetrazole, piperidine, 1,4-dioxane, 4-morpholine, pyridine, pyrimidine, thiazolo[4,5-b]-pyridine, quinoline, or indole, or the following heterocycles:



15 The term "(lower alkyl)-Het" as used herein, means a heterocyclic radical as defined above linked through a chain or branched alkyl group, wherein alkyl is as defined above containing from 1 to 6 carbon atoms. Examples of (lower alkyl)-Het include:



20 The term "pharmaceutically acceptable ester" as used herein, either alone or in combination with another substituent, means esters of the compound of formula I in which any of the carboxyl functions of the molecule, but preferably the carboxy terminus, is replaced by an alkoxy carbonyl function:



25 in which the R moiety of the ester is selected from alkyl (e.g. methyl, ethyl, n-propyl, t-butyl, n-butyl); alkoxyalkyl (e.g. methoxymethyl); alkoxyacetyl (e.g. acetoxyethyl); aralkyl (e.g. benzyl); aryloxyalkyl (e.g. phenoxyethyl); aryl (e.g. phenyl), optionally substituted with halogen, C₁₋₄ alkyl or C₁₋₄ alkoxy. Other suitable prodrug esters can be found in Design of prodrugs, Bundgaard, H. Ed. Elsevier (1985) incorporated herewith by reference. Such pharmaceutically acceptable esters are usually

hydrolyzed *in vivo* when injected in a mammal and transformed into the acid form of the compound of formula I.

With regard to the esters described above, unless otherwise specified, any alkyl moiety present advantageously contains 1 to 16 carbon atoms, particularly 1 to 6 carbon atoms. Any aryl moiety present in such esters advantageously comprises a phenyl group.

In particular the esters may be a C₁₋₁₆ alkyl ester, an unsubstituted benzyl ester or a benzyl ester substituted with at least one halogen, C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, nitro or trifluoromethyl.

10 The term "pharmaceutically acceptable salt" as used herein includes those derived from pharmaceutically acceptable bases. Examples of suitable bases include choline, ethanolamine and ethylenediamine. Na⁺, K⁺, and Ca⁺⁺ salts are also contemplated to be within the scope of the invention (also see Pharmaceutical salts, Birge, S.M. et al., J. Pharm. Sci., (1977), 66, 1-19, incorporated herein by reference).

Preferred embodiments

Included within the scope of this invention are compounds of formula I wherein Preferably, **B** is a C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, nitro, cyano, cyanoalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or

20 **B** is preferably Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, nitro, cyano, cyanoalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl.

25 Alternatively, **B** is preferably R₄-SO₂ wherein R₄ is preferably C₁₋₆ alkyl; amido; (lower alkyl)amide; C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₄ aralkyl or Het, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl.

Alternatively, **B** is preferably an acyl derivative of formula R₄-C(O)- wherein R₄ is preferably

30 (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, hydroxy or C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;

(ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, both optionally substituted with hydroxy, carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;

(iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;

(v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino

5 optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl.

Alternatively, **B** is preferably a carboxyl of formula R₄-O-C(O)-, wherein R₄ is preferably

(i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amide;

10 (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amide;

(iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆

15 alkyl; or

(v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amide.

Alternatively, **B** is preferably an amide of formula R₄-N(R₅)-C(O)- wherein R₄ is preferably

20 (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;

(ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-

25 substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;

(iii) amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₃ alkyl;

(iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or

(v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy,

30 amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amide; and R₅ is preferably H or methyl.

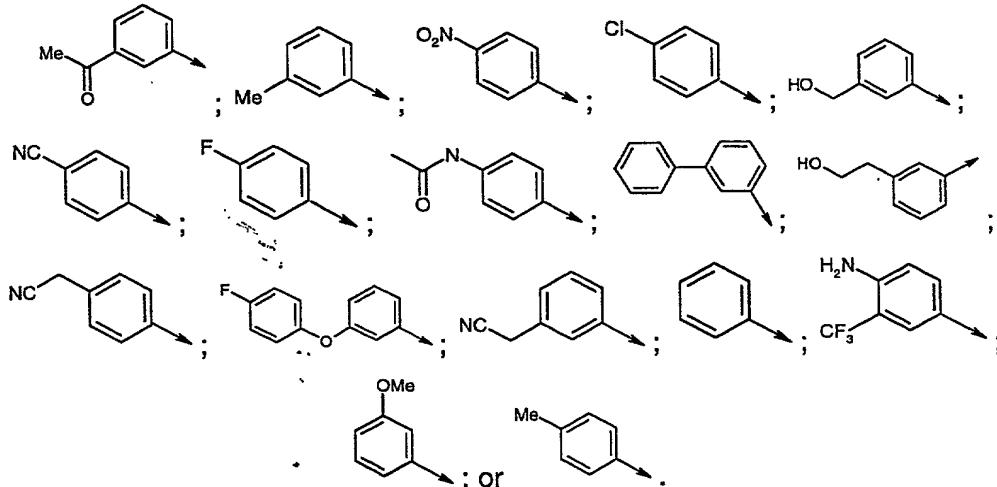
Alternatively, **B** is a preferably thioamide of formula R₄-NH-C(S)-; wherein R₄ is preferably

(i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl or C₁₋₆ alkoxy;

(ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl or C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C_{1-6} alkoxy)carbonyl, amino or amido.

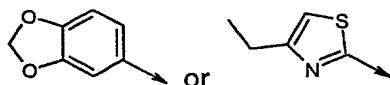
More preferably, **B** is a C_6 or C_{10} aryl optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, nitro, cyano, cyanoalkyl,

5 amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, such that **B** is for example:

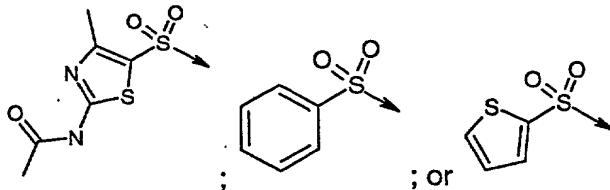


10

or **B** is more preferably Het optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, halo, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, such that **B** is for example:

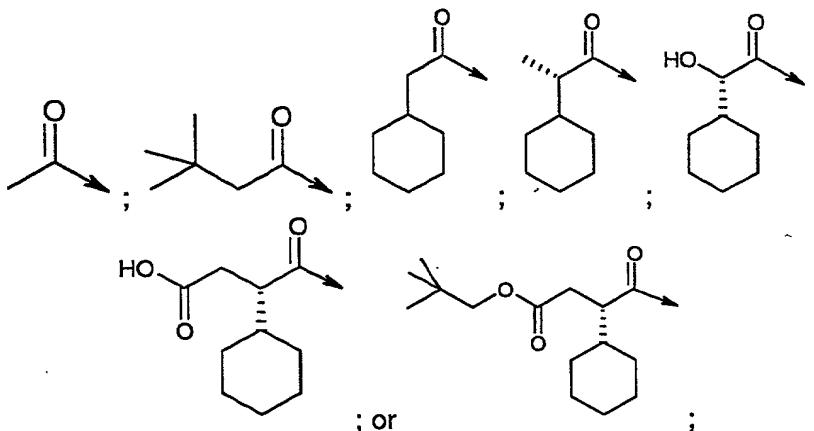


15 Alternatively, **B** is more preferably R_4-SO_2 wherein R_4 is preferably C_6 or C_{10} aryl, a C_{7-14} aralkyl or Het all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; amido, (lower alkyl)amide, such that **B** is, for example:



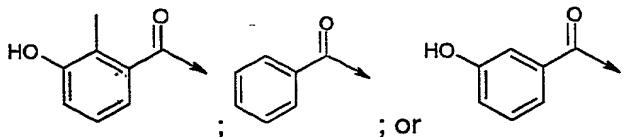
20 Alternatively, **B** is more preferably an acyl derivative of formula $R_4-C(O)-$ wherein R_4 is preferably

(i) C_{1-10} alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, hydroxy or C_{1-6} alkoxy; or
(ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl or C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, both optionally substituted with hydroxy, carboxyl, (C_{1-6} alkoxy)carbonyl, such that **B** is, for example:



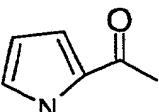
or R_4 is preferably

(iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy,
such that B is for example:



or \mathbf{R}_4 is preferably

(v) Het optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amido or amino, such that B is for example:

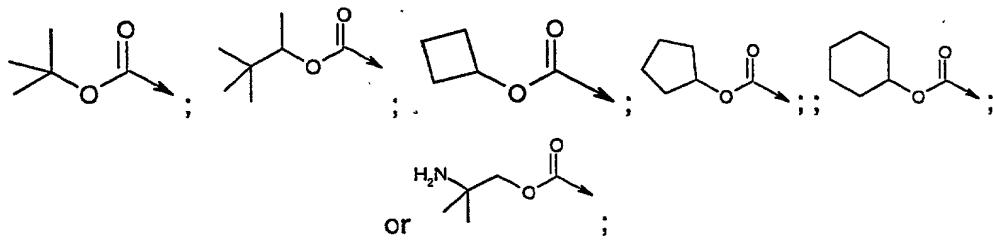


10

Alternatively, B is more preferably a carboxyl of formula R₄-O-C(O)-, wherein R₄ is preferably

(i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy or amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;

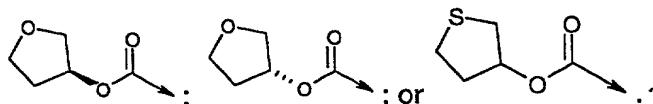
15 (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, such that B is for example:



20 or R_4 is preferably

(iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or
 (v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amido, or amino optionally mono-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, such that B is for example:

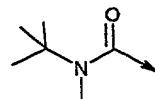
5 example:



Alternatively, B is more preferably an amide of formula R₄-N(R₅)-C(O)- wherein R₄ is preferably

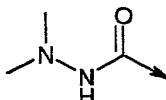
10 (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;
 (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; and

15 R₅ is H or methyl, such that B is for example:



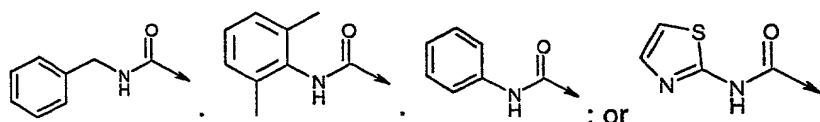
or R₄ is preferably

(iii) amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₃ alkyl, such that B is for example:



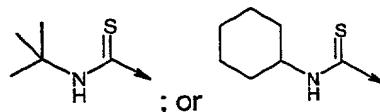
20 or R₄ is preferably

(iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino or amido optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or
 (v) Het optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino or amido, such that B is for example:



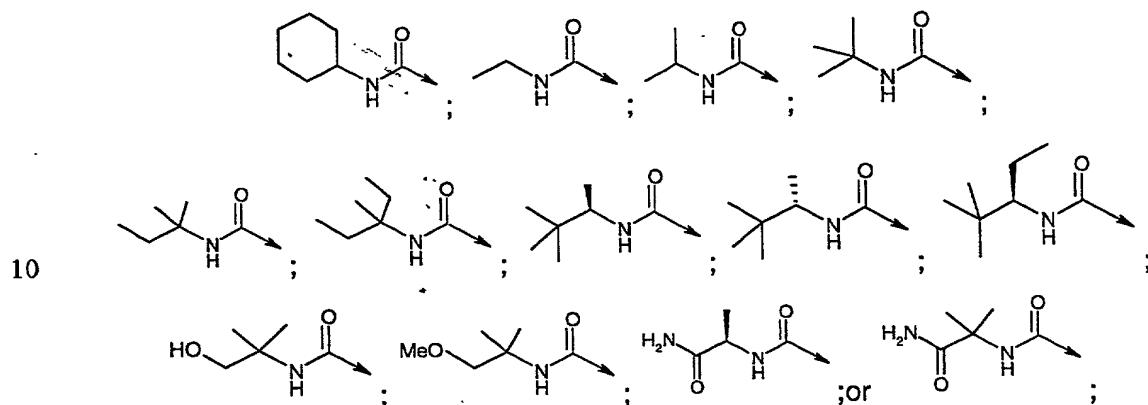
Alternatively, B is more preferably a thioamide of formula R₄-NH-C(S)-; wherein R₄ is preferably

R₄ is (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl; or (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, such that **B** is for example:



Most preferably, **B** is an amide of formula **R₄-NH-C(O)-** wherein **R₄** is preferably

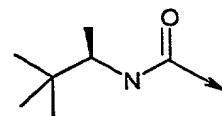
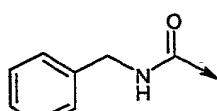
- (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;
- 5 (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;



or **R₄** is preferably

- (iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino or amido, such that **B** is for example:

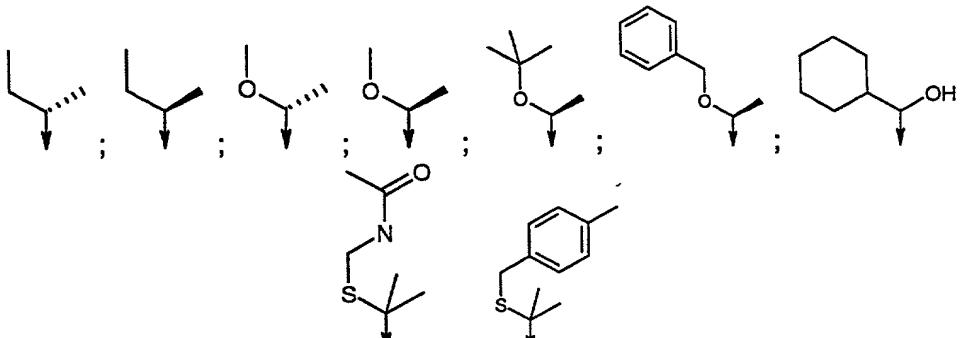
15



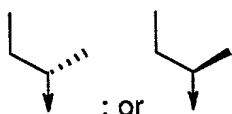
Even most preferably, **B** is *tert*-butoxycarbonyl (Boc) or

Preferably, **Y** is H or methyl. More preferably, **Y** is H.

- Preferably, **R³** is C₁₋₈ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₁₋₆ thioalkyl, acetamido, C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, such that **B** is for example:



More preferably, R^3 is the side chain of *tert*-butylglycine (Tbg), Ile, Val, Chg or:



5 Most preferably, R^3 is the side chain of Tbg, Chg or Val.

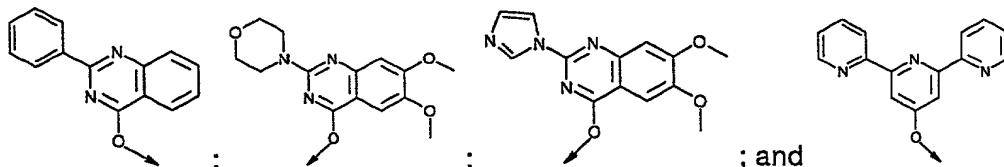
Included within the scope of the invention are compounds of formula I wherein, preferably, R_2 is S- R_{20} or Q- R_{20} wherein R_{20} is preferably a C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, Het or -CH₂-Het, all optionally mono-, di- or tri-substituted with R_{21} .

Preferably, R_{21} is C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; lower thioalkyl; amino or amido
optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl,
Het or (lower alkyl)-Het; NO₂; OH; halo; trifluoromethyl; carboxyl; C₆ or C₁₀
aryl, C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, or Het, said aryl, aralkyl or Het being optionally substituted
with R_{22} . More preferably, R_{21} is C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; amino; di(lower
alkyl)amino; (lower alkyl)amide; C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, or Het, said aryl or Het being
optionally substituted with R_{22} .

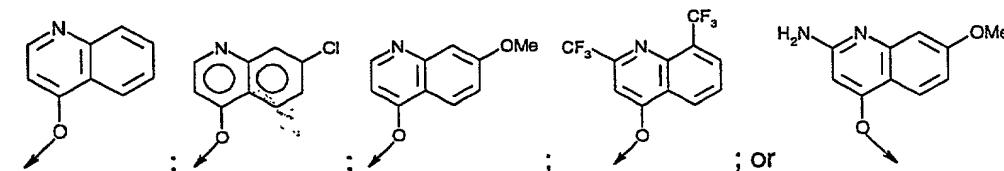
Preferably, R_{22} is C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; amino; mono-
or di-(lower alkyl)amino; (lower alkyl)amide; sulfonylalkyl; NO₂; OH;
halo; trifluoromethyl; carboxyl or Het. More preferably, R_{22} is C₁₋₆
alkyl; C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; amino; mono- or di(lower
alkyl)amino; amido; (lower alkyl)amide; halo; trifluoromethyl or Het.
Most preferably, R_{22} is C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; halo; amino optionally
mono- or di-substituted with lower alkyl; amido; (lower alkyl)amide; or
Het. Even most preferably, R_{22} is methyl; ethyl; isopropyl; *tert*-butyl;
methoxy; chloro; amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with lower
alkyl; amido, (lower alkyl)amide; or (lower alkyl) 2-thiazole.

Alternatively, R_2 is preferably selected from the group consisting of:

18



5 ; and



10

More preferably, R_{21A} is C_{1-6} alkyl such as isopropyl, tert-butyl or cyclohexyl;

C_{1-6} alkoxy such as methoxy, , , , or ;

lower thioalkyl such as ;

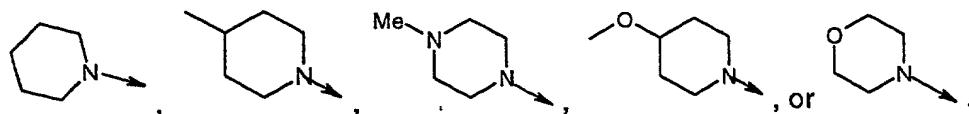
halo such as chloro;

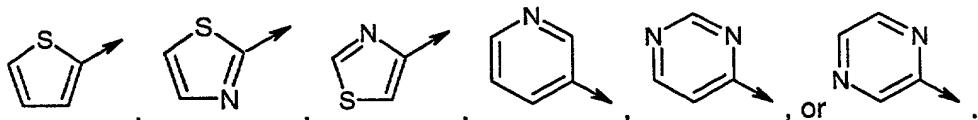
15 amino optionally mono-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; or C_6 or C_{10} aryl, such that R_{21A} is for example: dimethylamino, Ph-N(Me)-;

unsubstituted C_6 or C_{10} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, such as for example phenyl or ;

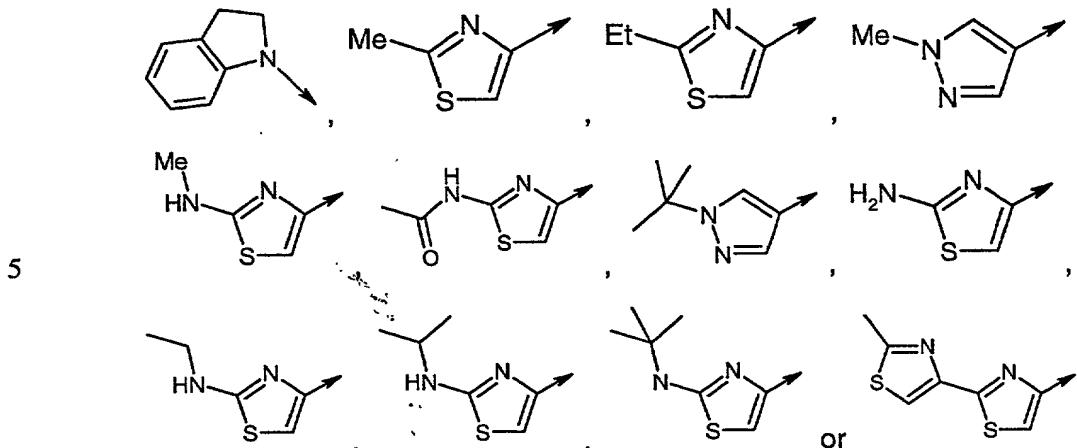
or R_{21A} is more preferably Het optionally substituted with R_{22} wherein R_{22} is C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-

20 substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, or Het, such that R_{21A} is for example:

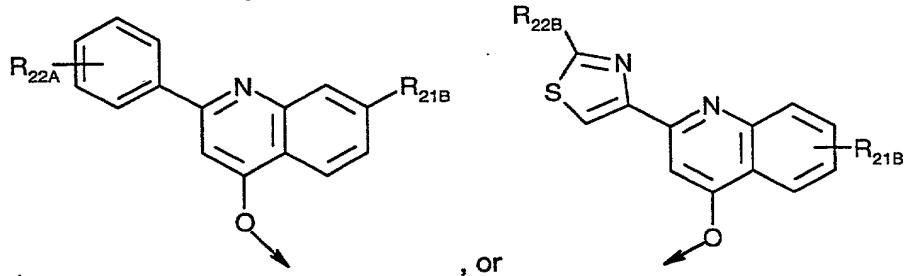




Most preferably, $\mathbf{R}_{21\mathbf{A}}$ is C_6 , C_{10} aryl or Het, all optionally substituted with \mathbf{R}_{22} as defined above, such that $\mathbf{R}_{21\mathbf{A}}$ is for example:



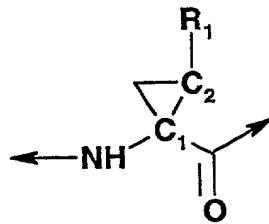
Even most preferably, \mathbf{R}_2 is:



wherein $\mathbf{R}_{22\mathbf{A}}$ is preferably C_{1-6} alkyl (such as methyl); C_{1-6} alkoxy (such as methoxy); 10 or halo (such as chloro); $\mathbf{R}_{22\mathbf{B}}$ is preferably C_{1-6} alkyl, amino optionally mono-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, amido; or (lower alkyl)amide; and $\mathbf{R}_{21\mathbf{B}}$ is preferably C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, amino, di(lower alkyl)amino, (lower alkyl)amide, NO_2 , OH , halo, trifluoromethyl, or carboxyl. More preferably, $\mathbf{R}_{21\mathbf{B}}$ is C_{1-6} alkoxy, or di(lower alkyl)amino. Most preferably, $\mathbf{R}_{21\mathbf{B}}$ is methoxy.

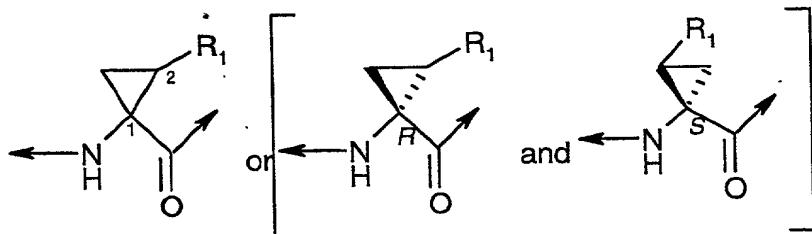
15 As described hereinabove the $\mathbf{P}1$ segment of the compounds of formula I is a cyclobutyl or cyclopropyl ring, both optionally substituted with \mathbf{R}_1 . Preferably, \mathbf{R}^1 is H, C_{1-3} alkyl, C_{3-5} cycloalkyl, or C_{2-4} alkenyl optionally substituted with halo. More preferably \mathbf{R}^1 is ethyl, vinyl, cyclopropyl, 1 or 2-bromoethyl or 1 or 2-bromovinyl. Most preferably, \mathbf{R}_1 is vinyl.

20 When \mathbf{R}_1 is not H, then $\mathbf{P}1$ is preferably a cyclopropyl system of formula:

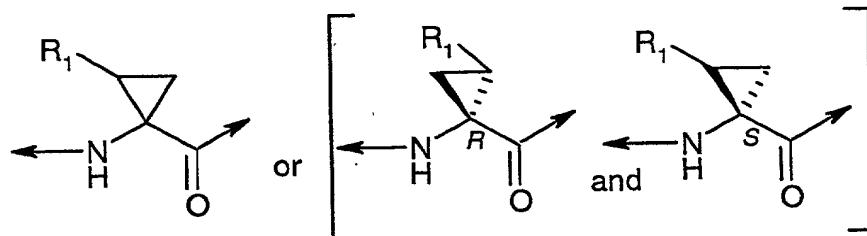


wherein C_1 and C_2 each represent an asymmetric carbon atom at positions 1 and 2 of the cyclopropyl ring. Notwithstanding other possible asymmetric centers at other segments of the compounds of formula I, the presence of these two asymmetric centers means that the compounds of formula I can exist as racemic mixtures of diastereoisomers. As illustrated in the examples hereinafter, the racemic mixtures can be prepared and thereafter separated into individual optical isomers, or these optical isomers can be prepared by chiral synthesis.

Hence, the compound of formula I can exist as a racemic mixture of diastereoisomers at carbon 1 but wherein R_1 at carbon 2 is orientated *syn* to the carbonyl at position 1, represented by the radical:

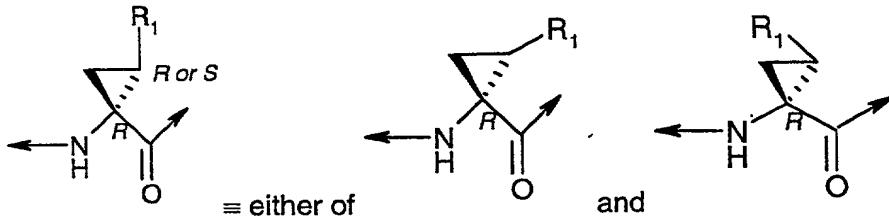


or the compound of formula I can exist as a racemic mixture of diastereoisomers wherein R_1 at position 2 is orientated *anti* to the carbonyl at position 1, represented by the radical:



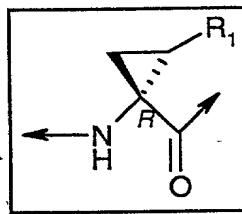
In turn, the racemic mixtures can be separated into individual optical isomers. A most interesting finding of this invention pertains to the addition of a R_1 substituent on the carbon 2 as well as the spatial orientation of the P1 segment. The finding concerns the configuration of the asymmetric carbon 1. A preferred embodiment is

one wherein R_1 is not H and carbon 1 has the *R* configuration.



More explicitly, the introduction of a substituent (R_1) at C2 has an impact on the potency when R_1 is introduced in a way that C1 has the *R* configuration. For

- 5 example compounds **901** (*1R,2S*) and **203** (*1R,2R*) have activities of 25 and 82 nM respectively. When compared to the unsubstituted cyclopropyl compound **111** (475 nM), a substantial increase in potency is observed. Moreover, as shown for compounds **901** and **203** when carbon 1 has the *R* configuration, HCV NS3 protease inhibition is further enhanced by the configuration of the substituent R_1 ,
- 10 (e.g. alkyl or alkylene) at carbon 2 of the cyclopropyl ring, e.g. the compound that possesses R_1 "syn" to the carboxyl has greater potency (25 nM) than the "anti" enantiomer (82 nM). We can see the effect of the *R* vs. *S* configuration at C1 by comparing compounds **801** (*1R,2S*) and its corresponding (*1S,2S*) isomer which have potencies of 6 nM and >10 μ M respectively, a difference of over 1500 fold!!
- 15 Therefore a most preferred compound is an optical isomer having the R_1 substituent and the carbonyl in a *syn* orientation in the following absolute configuration:



In the case where R_1 is ethyl, for example, the asymmetric carbon atoms at positions 1 and 2 have the *R,R* configuration.

- 20 Included within the scope of this invention are compounds of formula I wherein B is a C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-16} aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, nitro, cyano, cyanoalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; or Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, nitro, cyano, cyanoalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, or
- 25 B is R_4-SO_2 wherein R_4 is preferably amido; (lower alkyl)amide; C_6 or C_{10} aryl, C_{7-14}

aralkyl or Het, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, or

B is an acyl derivative of formula R₄-C(O)- wherein R₄ is

- (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, hydroxy or C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;
- 5 (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, both optionally substituted with hydroxy, carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;
- (iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;
- 10 (v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, or

15 **B** is a carboxyl of formula R₄-O-C(O)-, wherein R₄ is

- (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amide;
- (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amide;
- 20 (iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or
- (v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amido, or

25 **B** is an amide of formula R₄-N(R₅)-C(O)- wherein R₄ is

- (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;
- 30 (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;

(iii) amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₃ alkyl;
 (iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl,
 hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆
 alkyl; or

5 (v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl,
 hydroxy, amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido or (lower
 alkyl)amide; and

R₅ is preferably H or methyl, or

B is thioamide of formula R₄-NH-C(S)-; wherein R₄ is

10 (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl or C₁₋₆ alkoxy;
 (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with
 carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amino or amido;

Y is H or methyl;

R³ is C₁₋₈ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with

15 hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₁₋₆ thioalkyl, acetamido, C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl;

R₂ is S-R₂₀ or O-R₂₀ wherein R₂₀ is preferably a C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, Het or -CH₂-Het, all optionally mono-, di- or tri-substituted with R₂₁, wherein

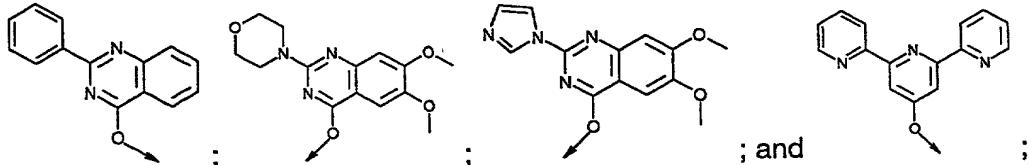
R₂₁ is C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; lower thioalkyl; amino or amido optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, Het or (lower

20 alkyl)-Het; NO₂; OH; halo; trifluoromethyl; carboxyl; C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, or Het, said aryl, aralkyl or Het being optionally substituted with R₂₂, wherein

R₂₂ is C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; amino; mono- or di-(lower alkyl)amino; (lower alkyl)amide; sulfonylalkyl; NO₂; OH; halo;

25 trifluoromethyl; carboxyl or Het; or

R₂ is selected from the group consisting of:

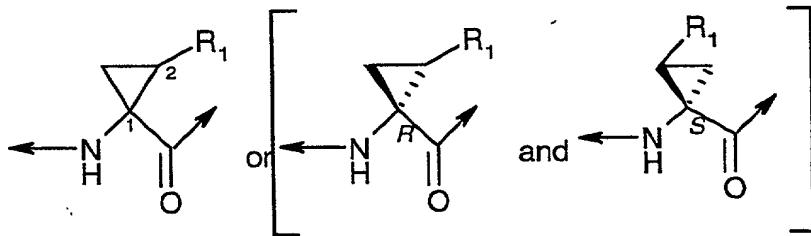


or R₂ is 1-naphthylmethoxy; 2-naphthylmethoxy; benzyloxy, 1-naphthyloxy; 2-naphthyloxy; or quinolin oxy unsubstituted, mono- or di-substituted with R₂₁ as

30 defined above;

the P1 segment is a cyclobutyl or cyclopropyl ring, both optionally substituted with

R_1 , wherein R^1 is H, C_{1-3} alkyl, C_{3-5} cycloalkyl, or C_{2-4} alkenyl optionally substituted with halo, and said R_1 at carbon 2 is orientated *syn* to the carbonyl at position 1, represented by the radical:



5 Included within the scope of this invention are compounds of formula I wherein **B** is a C_6 or C_{10} aryl optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, nitro, cyano, cyanoalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; or **B** is Het optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, halo, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; or **B** is R_4-SO_2 wherein R_4 is C_6 or C_{10} aryl, a C_{7-14} aralkyl or Het all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; amido, (lower alkyl)amide; or **B** is an acyl derivative of formula $R_4-C(O)-$ wherein R_4 is

- (i) C_{1-10} alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, hydroxy or C_{1-6} alkoxy; or

15 (ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl or C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, both optionally substituted with hydroxy, carboxyl, (C_{1-6} alkoxy)carbonyl; or

- (iv) C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-16} aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy; or
- (v) Het optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amido or amino;

20 or **B** is a carboxyl of formula $R_4-O-C(O)-$, wherein R_4 is

- (i) C_{1-10} alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkoxy or amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;
- (ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl, C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C_{1-6} alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; or

25 (iv) C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-16} aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; or

- (v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl,

hydroxy, amido, or amino optionally mono-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or **B** is an amide of formula R₄-N(R₅)-C(O)- wherein R₄ is:

- (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;
- 5 (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; and R₅ is H or methyl; or
- (iii) amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₃ alkyl; or
- 10 (iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino or amido optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or
- (v) Het optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino or amido; or

B is a thioamide of formula R₄-NH-C(S)-; wherein R₄ is:

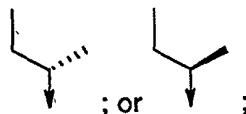
- (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl; or (ii). C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl; or

15 **B** is an amide of formula R₄-NH-C(O)- wherein R₄ is:

- i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;
- (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;
- 20 (iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino or amido;

Y is H.;

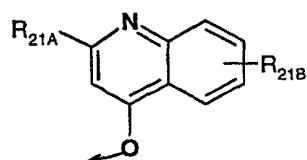
25 R³ is the side chain of *tert*-butylglycine (Tbg), Ile, Val, Chg or:



R₂ is 1-naphthylmethoxy; or quinolinoxy unsubstituted, mono- or di-substituted with

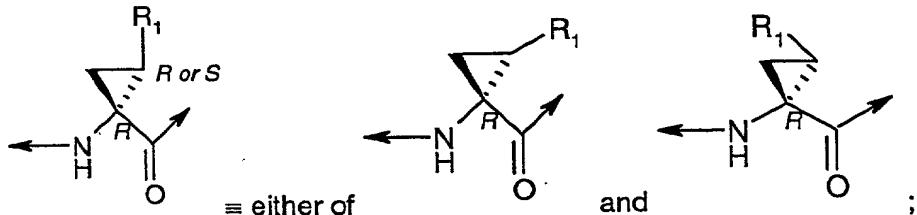
R₂₁ as defined above, or

R₂ is :



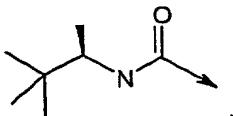
wherein R_{21A} is C_{1-6} alkyl; C_{1-6} alkoxy; C_6, C_{10} aryl or Het; lower thioalkyl; halo; amino optionally mono-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; or C_6, C_{10} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl or Het, optionally substituted with R_{22} wherein R_{22} is C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, or Het;

5 P1 is a cyclopropyl ring wherein carbon 1 has the *R* configuration,



and R^1 is ethyl, vinyl, cyclopropyl, 1 or 2-bromoethyl or 1 or 2-bromovinyl.

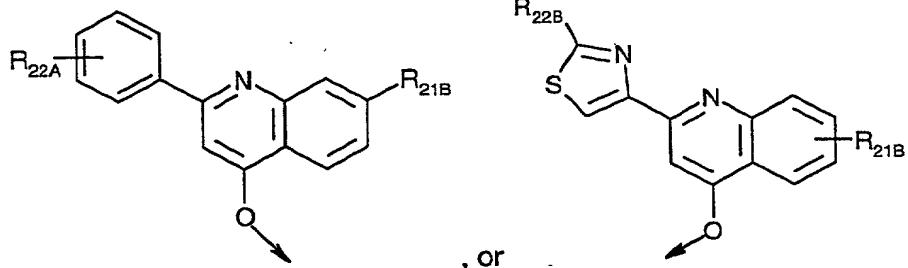
Further included in the scope of the invention are compounds of formula I wherein:



B is *tert*-butoxycarbonyl (Boc) or

10 R^3 is the side chain of Tbg, Chg or Val;

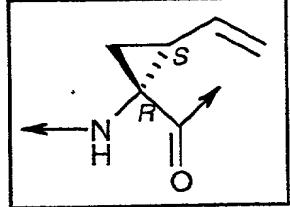
R_2 is:



wherein R_{22A} is C_{1-6} alkyl (such as methyl); C_{1-6} alkoxy (such as methoxy); or halo (such as chloro); R_{22B} is C_{1-6} alkyl, amino optionally mono-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl,

15 amido, or (lower alkyl)amide; and R_{21B} is C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, amino, di(lower alkyl)amino, (lower alkyl)amide, NO_2 , OH, halo, trifluoromethyl, or carboxyl;

and P1 is:



Finally, included within the scope of this invention is each compound of formula I as

presented in Tables 1 to 10.

According to an alternate embodiment, the pharmaceutical compositions of this invention may additionally comprise another anti-HCV agent. Examples of anti-HCV agents include, α - or β -interferon, ribavirin and amantadine.

5 According to another alternate embodiment, the pharmaceutical compositions of this invention may additionally comprise other inhibitors of HCV protease.

According to yet another alternate embodiment, the pharmaceutical compositions of this invention may additionally comprise an inhibitor of other targets in the HCV life cycle, including but not limited to, helicase, polymerase, metalloprotease or internal

10 ribosome entry site (IRES).

The pharmaceutical compositions of this invention may be administered orally, parenterally or via an implanted reservoir. Oral administration or administration by injection is preferred. The pharmaceutical compositions of this invention may contain any conventional non-toxic pharmaceutically-acceptable carriers, adjuvants

15 or vehicles. In some cases, the pH of the formulation may be adjusted with pharmaceutically acceptable acids, bases or buffers to enhance the stability of the formulated compound or its delivery form. The term parenteral as used herein includes subcutaneous, intracutaneous, intravenous, intramuscular, intra-articular, intrasynovial, intrasternal, intrathecal, and intralesional injection or infusion

20 techniques.

The pharmaceutical compositions may be in the form of a sterile injectable preparation, for example, as a sterile injectable aqueous or oleaginous suspension. This suspension may be formulated according to techniques known in the art using suitable dispersing or wetting agents (such as, for example Tween 80) and

25 suspending agents.

The pharmaceutical compositions of this invention may be orally administered in any orally acceptable dosage form including, but not limited to, capsules, tablets, and aqueous suspensions and solutions. In the case of tablets for oral use, carriers which are commonly used include lactose and corn starch. Lubricating agents, such as magnesium stearate, are also typically added. For oral administration in a capsule form, useful diluents include lactose and dried corn starch. When aqueous suspensions are administered orally, the active ingredient is combined with emulsifying and suspending agents. If desired, certain sweetening and/or flavoring and/or coloring agents may be added.

Other suitable vehicles or carriers for the above noted formulations and compositions can be found in standard pharmaceutical texts, e.g. in "Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences", The Science and Practice of Pharmacy, 19th Ed. Mack Publishing Company, Easton, Penn., (1995).

5 Dosage levels of between about 0.01 and about 100 mg/kg body weight per day, preferably between about 0.5 and about 75 mg/kg body weight per day of the protease inhibitor compounds described herein are useful in a monotherapy for the prevention and treatment of HCV mediated disease. Typically, the pharmaceutical compositions of this invention will be administered from about 1 to about 5 times per

10 day or alternatively, as a continuous infusion. Such administration can be used as a chronic or acute therapy. The amount of active ingredient that may be combined with the carrier materials to produce a single dosage form will vary depending upon the host treated and the particular mode of administration. A typical preparation will contain from about 5% to about 95% active compound (*w/w*). Preferably, such

15 preparations contain from about 20% to about 80% active compound.

As the skilled artisan will appreciate, lower or higher doses than those recited above may be required. Specific dosage and treatment regimens for any particular patient will depend upon a variety of factors, including the activity of the specific compound employed, the age, body weight, general health status, sex, diet, time of

20 administration, rate of excretion, drug combination, the severity and course of the infection, the patient's disposition to the infection and the judgment of the treating physician. Generally, treatment is initiated with small dosages substantially less than the optimum dose of the peptide. Thereafter, the dosage is increased by small increments until the optimum effect under the circumstances is reached. In general,

25 the compound is most desirably administered at a concentration level that will generally afford antivirally effective results without causing any harmful or deleterious side effects.

When the compositions of this invention comprise a combination of a compound of formula I and one or more additional therapeutic or prophylactic agent, both the

30 compound and the additional agent should be present at dosage levels of between about 10 to 100%, and more preferably between about 10 and 80% of the dosage normally administered in a monotherapy regimen.

When these compounds or their pharmaceutically acceptable salts are formulated together with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, the resulting composition may

be administered *in vivo* to mammals, such as man, to inhibit HCV NS3 protease or to treat or prevent HCV virus infection. Such treatment may also be achieved using the compounds of this invention in combination with agents which include, but are not limited to: immunomodulatory agents, such as α -, β -, or γ -interferons; other 5 antiviral agents such as ribavirin, amantadine; other inhibitors of HCV NS3 protease; inhibitors of other targets in the HCV life cycle, which include but not limited to, helicase, polymerase, metalloprotease, or internal ribosome entry site (IRES); or combinations thereof. The additional agents may be combined with the compounds of this invention to create a single dosage form. Alternatively these additional 10 agents may be separately administered to a mammal as part of a multiple dosage form.

Accordingly, another embodiment of this invention provides methods of inhibiting HCV NS3 protease activity in mammals by administering a compound of the formula I, wherein the substituents are as defined above.

15 In a preferred embodiment, these methods are useful in decreasing HCV NS3 protease activity in a mammal. If the pharmaceutical composition comprises only a compound of this invention as the active component, such methods may additionally comprise the step of administering to said mammal an agent selected from an immunomodulatory agent, an antiviral agent, a HCV protease inhibitor, or an inhibitor of other targets in the HCV life cycle such as helicase, polymerase, or 20 metallo protease or IRES. Such additional agent may be administered to the mammal prior to, concurrently with, or following the administration of the compositions of this invention.

In an alternate preferred embodiment, these methods are useful for inhibiting viral 25 replication in a mammal. Such methods are useful in treating or preventing HCV disease. If the pharmaceutical composition comprises only a compound of this invention as the active component, such methods may additionally comprise the step of administering to said mammal an agent selected from an immunomodulatory agent, an antiviral agent, a HCV protease inhibitor, or an inhibitor of other targets in 30 the HCV life cycle. Such additional agent may be administered to the mammal prior to, concurrently with, or following the administration of the composition according to this invention.

The compounds set forth herein may also be used as laboratory reagents. The compounds of this invention may also be used to treat or prevent viral contamination

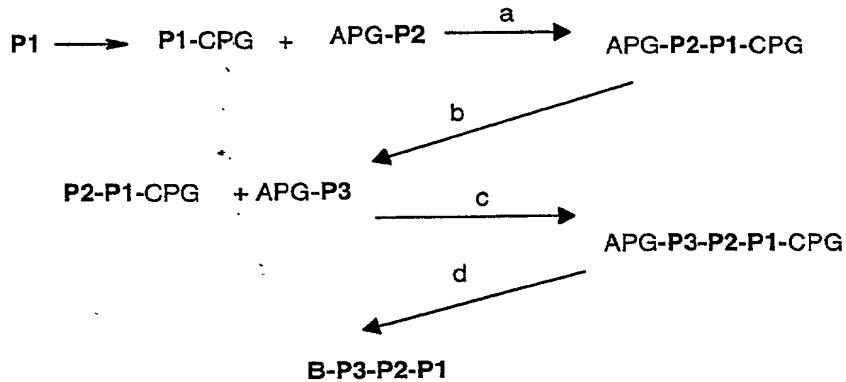
of materials and therefore reduce the risk of viral infection of laboratory or medical personnel or patients who come in contact with such materials (e.g. blood, tissue, surgical instruments and garments, laboratory instruments and garments, and blood collection apparatuses and materials).

5 The compounds set forth herein may also be used as research reagents. The compounds of this invention may also be used as positive control to validate surrogate cell-based assays or *in vitro* or *in vivo* viral replication assays.

PROCESS

The compounds of the present invention were synthesized according to a general process as illustrated in scheme I (wherein CPG is a carboxyl protecting group and APG is an amino protecting group):

SCHEME I



Briefly, the P1, P2, and P3 can be linked by well known peptide coupling techniques.

15 The P1, P2, and P3 groups may be linked together in any order as long as the final compound corresponds to peptides of Formula I. For example, P3 can be linked to P2-P1 ; or P1 linked to P3-P2.

Generally, peptides are elongated by deprotecting the α -amino group of the N-terminal residue and coupling the unprotected carboxyl group of the next suitably N-protected amino acid through a peptide linkage using the methods described. This deprotection and coupling procedure is repeated until the desired sequence is obtained. This coupling can be performed with the constituent amino acids in stepwise fashion, as depicted in Scheme I, or by solid phase peptide synthesis according to the method originally described in Merrifield, J. Am. Chem. Soc., 20 (1963), 85, 2149-2154, the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated by reference. Coupling between two amino acids, an amino acid and a peptide, or two peptide

fragments can be carried out using standard coupling procedures such as the azide method, mixed carbonic-carboxylic acid anhydride (isobutyl chloroformate) method, carbodiimide (dicyclohexylcarbodiimide, diisopropylcarbodiimide, or water-soluble carbodiimide) method, active ester (*p*-nitrophenyl ester, N-hydroxysuccinic imido ester) method, Woodward reagent K-method, carbonyldiimidazole method, phosphorus reagents or oxidation-reduction methods. Some of these methods (especially the carbodiimide method) can be enhanced by adding 1-hydroxybenzotriazole. These coupling reactions can be performed in either solution (liquid phase) or solid phase.

More explicitly, the coupling step involves the dehydrative coupling of a free carboxyl of one reactant with the free amino group of the other reactant in the presence of a coupling agent to form a linking amide bond. Descriptions of such coupling agents are found in general textbooks on peptide chemistry, for example, M. Bodanszky, "Peptide Chemistry", 2nd rev ed., Springer-Verlag, Berlin, Germany, (1993). Examples of suitable coupling agents are *N,N'*-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide, 1-hydroxybenzotriazole in the presence of *N,N'*-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide or *N*-ethyl-*N'*-(3-dimethylamino)propyl]carbodiimide. A practical and useful coupling agent is the commercially available (benzotriazol-1-yloxy)tris-(dimethylamino)phosphonium hexafluorophosphate, either by itself or in the presence of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole.

Another practical and useful coupling agent is commercially available 2-(1H-benzotriazol-1-yl)-*N,N,N',N'*-tetramethyluronium tetrafluoroborate. Still another practical and useful coupling agent is commercially available O-(7-azabenzotriazol-1-yl)-*N,N,N',N'*-tetramethyluronium hexafluorophosphate.

The coupling reaction is conducted in an inert solvent, e.g. dichloromethane, acetonitrile or dimethylformamide. An excess of a tertiary amine, e.g. diisopropylethylamine, *N*-methylmorpholine or *N*-methylpyrrolidine, is added to maintain the reaction mixture at a pH of about 8. The reaction temperature usually ranges between 0°C and 50°C and the reaction time usually ranges between 15 min and 24 h.

When a solid phase synthetic approach is employed, the C-terminal carboxylic acid is attached to an insoluble carrier (usually polystyrene). These insoluble carriers contain a group that will react with the carboxylic group to form a bond that is stable to the elongation conditions but readily cleaved later. Examples of which are: chloro- or bromomethyl resin, hydroxymethyl resin, trytil resin and 2-methoxy-4-

alkoxy-benzylalcoconol resin.

Many of these resins are commercially available with the desired C-terminal amino acid already incorporated. Alternatively, the amino acid can be incorporated on the solid support by known methods (Wang, S.-S., *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, (1973), **95**, 1328;

5 Atherton, E.; Shepard, R.C. "Solid-phase peptide synthesis; a practical approach" IRL Press: Oxford, (1989); 131-148). In addition to the foregoing, other methods of peptide synthesis are described in Stewart and Young, "Solid Phase Peptide Synthesis", 2nd ed., Pierce Chemical Co., Rockford, IL (1984); Gross, Meienhofer, Udenfriend, Eds., "The Peptides: Analysis, Synthesis, Biology", Vol. 1, 2, 3, 5, and 9, 10 Academic Press, New-York, (1980-1987); Bodansky et al., "The Practice of Peptide Synthesis" Springer-Verlag, New-York (1984), the disclosures of which are hereby incorporated by reference.

The functional groups of the constituent amino acids generally must be protected during the coupling reactions to avoid formation of undesired bonds. The protecting

15 groups that can be used are listed in Greene, "Protective Groups in Organic Chemistry", John Wiley & Sons, New York (1981) and "The Peptides: Analysis, Synthesis, Biology", Vol. 3, Academic Press, New York (1981), the disclosures of which are hereby incorporated by reference.

20 The α -carboxyl group of the C-terminal residue is usually protected as an ester (CPG) that can be cleaved to give the carboxylic acid. Protecting groups that can be used include: 1) alkyl esters such as methyl, trimethylsilyl, and *t*-butyl, 2) aralkyl esters such as benzyl and substituted benzyl, or 3) esters that can be cleaved by mild base treatment or mild reductive means such as trichloroethyl and phenacyl esters.

25 The α -amino group of each amino acid to be coupled to the growing peptide chain must be protected (APG). Any protecting group known in the art can be used. Examples of such groups include: 1) acyl groups such as formyl, trifluoroacetyl, phthalyl, and *p*-toluenesulfonyl; 2) aromatic carbamate groups such as benzyloxycarbonyl (Cbz or Z) and substituted benzyloxycarbonyls, and 9-30 fluorenylmethyloxycarbonyl (Fmoc); 3) aliphatic carbamate groups such as *tert*-butyloxycarbonyl (Boc), ethoxycarbonyl, diisopropylmethoxycarbonyl, and allyloxycarbonyl; 4) cyclic alkyl carbamate groups such as cyclopentyloxycarbonyl and adamantlyloxycarbonyl; 5) alkyl groups such as triphenylmethyl and benzyl; 6) trialkylsilyl such as trimethylsilyl; and 7) thiol containing groups such as

phenylthiocarbonyl and dithiasuccinoyl. The preferred α -amino protecting group is either Boc or Fmoc. Many amino acid derivatives suitably protected for peptide synthesis are commercially available.

The α -amino protecting group of the newly added amino acid residue is cleaved prior to the coupling of the next amino acid. When the Boc group is used, the methods of choice are trifluoroacetic acid, neat or in dichloromethane, or HCl in dioxane or in ethyl acetate. The resulting ammonium salt is then neutralized either prior to the coupling or *in situ* with basic solutions such as aqueous buffers, or tertiary amines in dichloromethane or acetonitrile or dimethylformamide. When the Fmoc group is used, the reagents of choice are piperidine or substituted piperidine in dimethylformamide, but any secondary amine can be used. The deprotection is carried out at a temperature between 0°C and room temperature (RT) usually 20 - 22°C.

Any of the amino acids having side chain functionalities must be protected during the preparation of the peptide using any of the above-described groups. Those skilled in the art will appreciate that the selection and use of appropriate protecting groups for these side chain functionalities depend upon the amino acid and presence of other protecting groups in the peptide. The selection of such protecting groups is important in that the group must not be removed during the deprotection and coupling of the α -amino group.

For example, when Boc is used as the α -amino protecting group, the following side chain protecting group are suitable: *p*-toluenesulfonyl (tosyl) moieties can be used to protect the amino side chain of amino acids such as Lys and Arg; acetamidomethyl, benzyl (Bn), or *t*-butylsulfonyl moieties can be used to protect the sulfide containing side chain of cysteine; benzyl (Bn) ethers can be used to protect the hydroxy containing side chains of serine, threonine or hydroxyproline; and benzyl esters can be used to protect the carboxy containing side chains of aspartic acid and glutamic acid.

When Fmoc is chosen for the α -amine protection, usually *tert*-butyl based protecting groups are acceptable. For instance, Boc can be used for lysine and arginine, *tert*-butyl ether for serine, threonine and hydroxyproline, and *tert*-butyl ester for aspartic acid and glutamic acid. Triphenylmethyl (Trityl) moiety can be used to protect the sulfide containing side chain of cysteine.

Once the elongation of the peptide is completed all of the protecting groups are

removed. When a liquid phase synthesis is used, the protecting groups are removed in whatever manner is dictated by the choice of protecting groups. These procedures are well known to those skilled in the art.

When a solid phase synthesis is used, the peptide is cleaved from the resin

5 simultaneously with the removal of the protecting groups. When the Boc protection method is used in the synthesis, treatment with anhydrous HF containing additives such as dimethyl sulfide, anisole, thioanisole, or *p*-cresol at 0°C is the preferred method for cleaving the peptide from the resin. The cleavage of the peptide can also be accomplished by other acid reagents such as trifluoromethanesulfonic

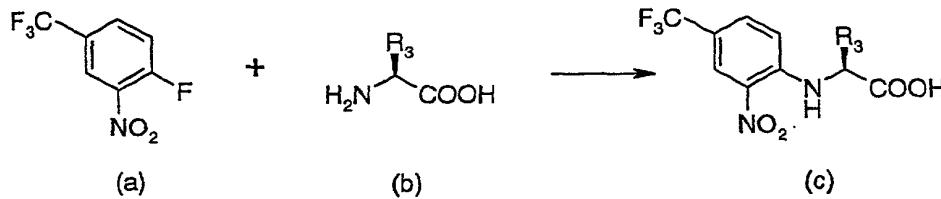
10 acid/trifluoroacetic acid mixtures. If the Fmoc protection method is used, the N-terminal Fmoc group is cleaved with reagents described earlier. The other protecting groups and the peptide are cleaved from the resin using solution of trifluoroacetic acid and various additives such as anisole, etc.

1. Synthesis of capping group B

15 Different capping groups B are introduced in the following manner:

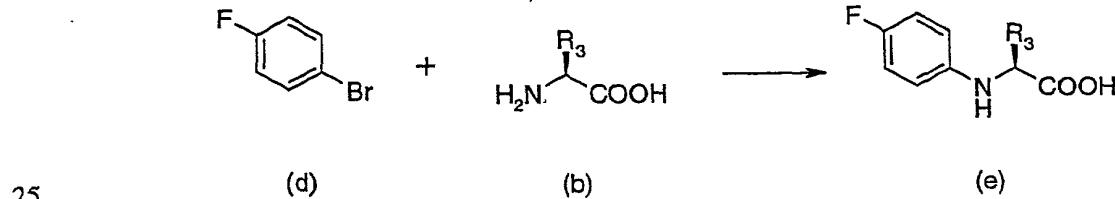
1.1) When B is an aryl, aralkyl: the arylated amino acids were prepared by one of the three methods below:

a) Direct nucleophilic displacement on a fluoro-nitro aryl moiety:



20 Briefly, 4-fluoro-3-nitrobenzotrifluoride (a) was reacted with L-amino acid (b) in the presence of a base such as potassium carbonate at 80°C to yield the desired N-aryl amino acid (c);

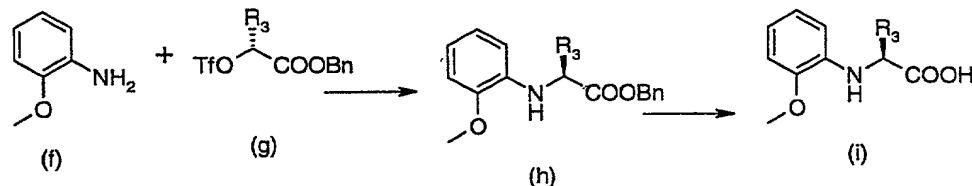
b) Copper catalyzed couplings according to Ma *et al.* (*J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 1998, 120, 12459-12467):



25 Briefly, bromo-4-fluorobenzene (d) was reacted with L-amino acid (b) in the presence of a base such as potassium carbonate and a catalytic amount of

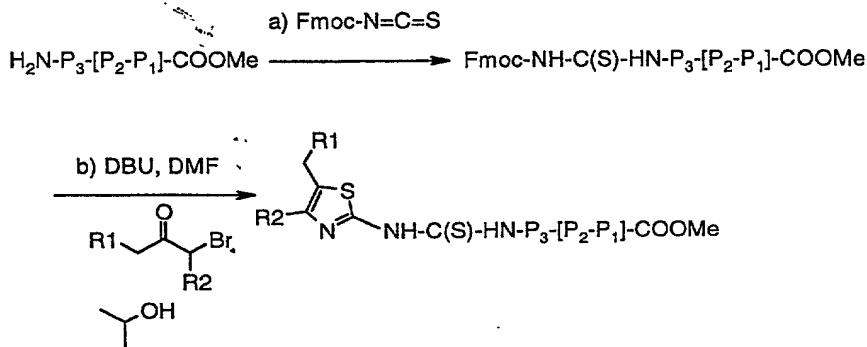
copper iodide at 90°C to yield the desired N-aryl amino acid (e); or

c) Nucleophilic displacement of a triflate by an aniline:



Briefly, o-anisidine (f) was reacted with triflate (g) in the presence of a base such as 2,6-lutidine at 90°C to give benzyl ester (h). Hydrogenation with 10% Pd/C yielded the desired N-aryl amino acid (i).

1.2) When B is an aminothiazole derivative:



a) The Fmoc-thiocyanate prepared according to Kearney et al., 1998, J. Org. Chem., 63, 196, was reacted with a protected P3 residue or the whole peptide or a peptide segment to provide the thiourea.

b) The thiourea derivative is reacted with an appropriate bromoketone to provide the corresponding thiazole derivative.

1.3) When B is $\text{R}_4\text{-C(O)-}$, $\text{R}_4\text{-S(O)}_2$:

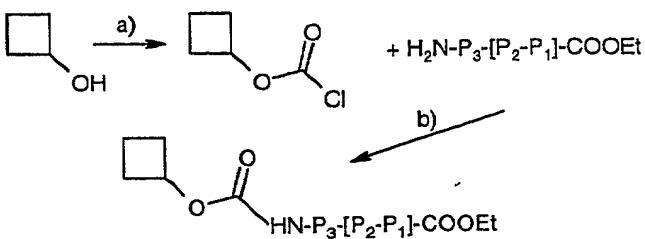
Protected P3 or the whole peptide or a peptide segment is coupled to an appropriate acyl chloride or sulfonyl chloride respectively, that is either commercially available or for which the synthesis is well known in the art.

1.4) When B is $\text{R}_4\text{O-C(O)-}$:

Protected P3 or the whole peptide or a peptide segment is coupled to an appropriate chloroformate that is either commercially available or for which the synthesis is well known in the art. For Boc- derivatives $(\text{Boc})_2\text{O}$ is used.

For example:

36



a) Cyclobutanol is treated with phosgene to furnish the corresponding chloroformate.

5 b) The chloroformate is treated with the desired NH₂-tripeptide in the presence of a base such as triethylamine to afford the cyclobutylcarbamate.

1.5) When B is R₄-N(R₅)-C(O)-, or R₄-NH-C(S)-, protected P3 or the whole peptide or a peptide segment is treated with phosgene followed by amine as described in *SynLett.*, Feb 1995; (2); 142-144

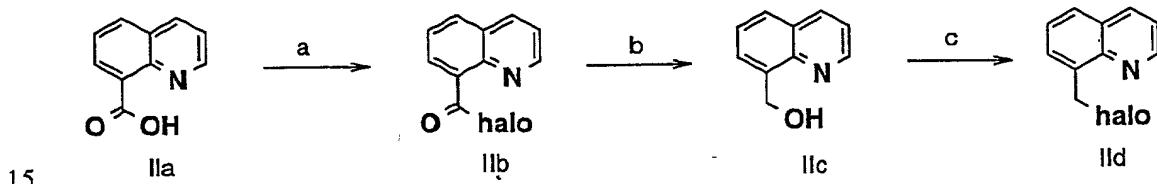
2. Synthesis of P2 moieties.

10 2.1 Synthesis of precursors:

A) Synthesis of haloarylmethane derivatives.

The preparation of halomethyl-8-quinoline **IIId** was done according to the procedure of K.N. Campbell et al., *J. Amer. Chem. Soc.*, (1946), **68**, 1844.

SCHEME II



15

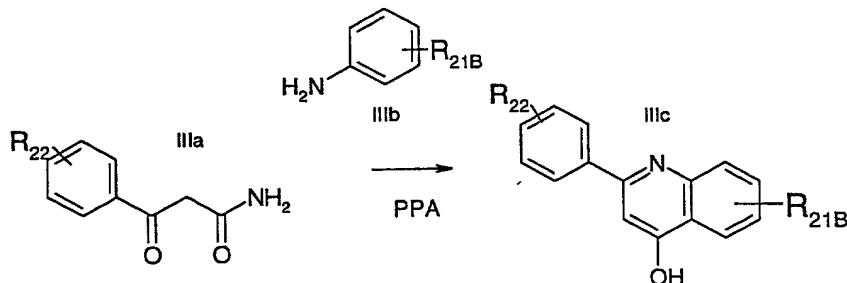
20

Briefly, 8-quinoline carboxylic acid **IIa** was converted to the corresponding alcohol **IIc** by reduction of the corresponding acyl halide **IIb** with a reducing agent such as lithium aluminium hydride. Treatment of alcohol **IIb** with the appropriate hydrohaloacid gives the desired halo derivative **IIId**. A specific embodiment of this process is presented in Example 1.

B) Synthesis of aryl alcohol derivatives:

2-phenyl-4-hydroxyquinoline derivatives **IIIc** were prepared according to Giardina et al. (*J. Med. Chem.*, (1997), **40**, 1794-1807).

SCHEME III



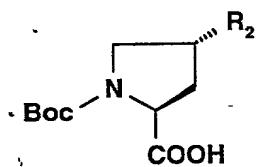
R₂₂ & R_{21B} = alkyl, OH, SH, halo, NH₂, NO₂.

Briefly, benzoylacetamide (IIIa) was condensed with the appropriate aniline (IIIb) and the imine obtained was cyclized with polyphosphoric acid to give the corresponding 2-phenyl-4-hydroxyquinoline (IIIc). A specific embodiment of this process is presented in Example 2.

Or alternatively, the process can be carried out in a different manner: Benzoylethyl ester (IIIa) was condensed with the appropriate aniline (IIIb) in the presence of acid and the imine obtained was cyclized by heating at 260-280°C to give the corresponding 2-phenyl-4-hydroxyquinoline (IIIc). A specific embodiments of this process is presented in Example 3 (compound 3e).

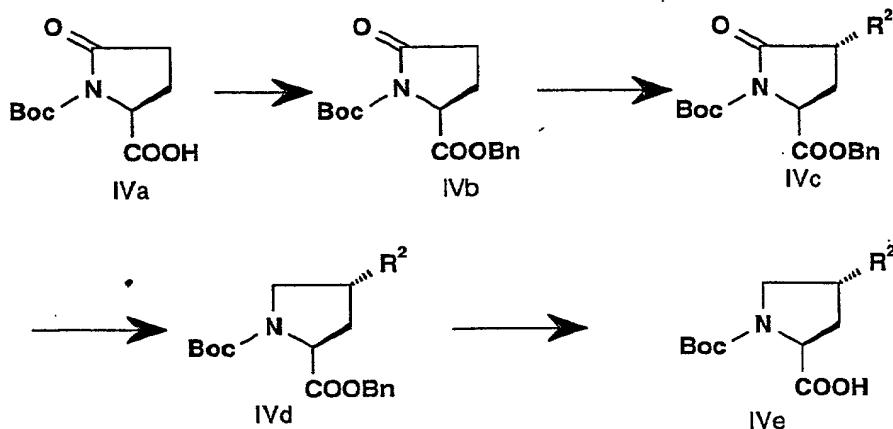
2.2. Synthesis of P2:

A) The synthesis of 4-substituted proline (wherein R² is attached to the ring via a carbon atom) (with the stereochemistry as shown):



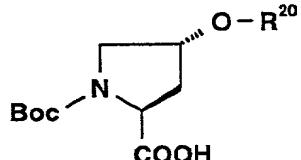
is done as shown in Scheme IV according to the procedures described by J. Ezquerra et al. (Tetrahedron, (1993), 38, 8665-8678) and C. Pedregal et al. (Tetrahedron Lett., (1994), 35, 2053-2056).

SCHEME IV



Briefly, Boc-pyroglutamic acid is protected as a benzyl ester. Treatment with a strong base such as lithium diisopropylamide followed by addition of an alkylating agent ($\text{Br}-\mathbf{R}^{20}$ or $\text{I}-\mathbf{R}^{20}$) gives the desired compounds **IVe** after reduction of the amide and deprotection of the ester.

B) The synthesis of O-substituted-4-(*R*)-hydroxyproline:



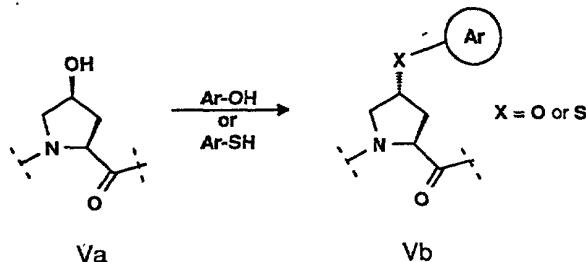
may be carried out using the different processes described below.

10 1) When R^{20} is aryl, aralkyl, Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, the process can be carried out according to the procedure described by E.M. Smith et al. (*J. Med. Chem.* (1988), 31, 875-885). Briefly, commercially available Boc-4(*R*)-hydroxyproline is treated with a base such as sodium hydride or potassium *tert*-butoxide and the resulting alkoxide reacted with halo- R^{20} ($Br-R^{20}$, $I-R^{20}$, etc.) to give the desired compounds. Specific embodiments of this process are presented in Examples 4, 5 and 7.

15 2) Alternatively, when R^{20} is aryl or Het, the compounds can also be prepared via a Mitsunobu reaction (Mitsunobu (1981), *Synthesis*, January, 1-28; Rano et al., (1995), *Tet. Lett.* 36(22), 3779-3792; Krchnak et al., (1995), *Tet. Lett.* 36(5), 62193-6196; Richter et al., (1994), *Tet. Lett.* 35(27), 4705-4706). Briefly, commercially available Boc-4(*S*)-hydroxyproline methyl ester is treated with the appropriate aryl alcohol or thiol in the presence of triphenylphosphine and diethylazodicarboxylate (DEAD) and the resulting

ester is hydrolyzed to the acid. Specific embodiments of this process are presented in Examples 6 and 8.

SCHEME V



5 Alternatively, the Mitsunobu reaction can be carried out in solid phase (Scheme V). The 96-well block of the Model 396 synthesizer (advanced ChemTech) is provided with aliquots of resin-bound compound (**Va**) and a variety of aryl alcohols or thiols and appropriate reagents are added. After incubation, each resin-bound product (**Vb**) is washed, dried, and cleaved from the resin.

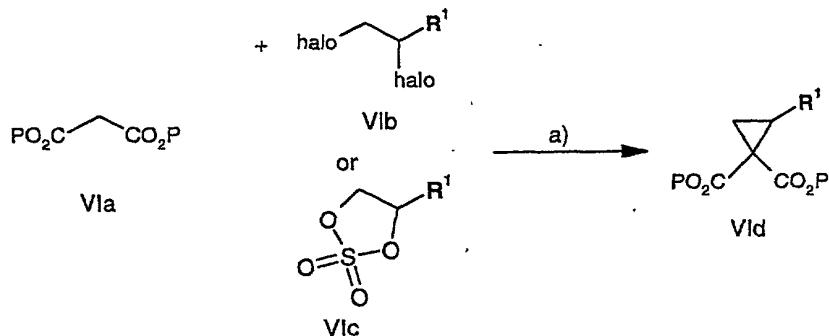
10 A Suzuki reaction (Miyaura *et al.*, (1981), *Synth. Comm.* **11**, 513; Sato *et al.*, (1989), *Chem. Lett.*, 1405; Watanabe *et al.*, (1992), *Synlett.*, 207; Takayuki *et al.*, (1993), *J. Org. Chem.* **58**, 2201; Frenette *et al.*, (1994), *Tet. Lett.* **35**(49), 9177-9180; Guiles *et al.*, (1996), *J. Org. Chem.* **61**, 5169-5171) can also be used to further functionalize the aryl substituent.

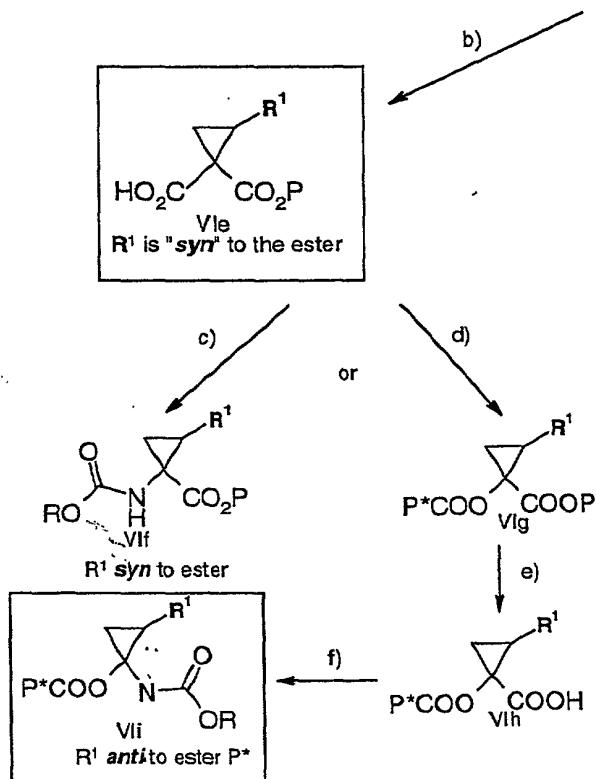
15 3. Synthesis of P1 moieties.

3.1 Synthesis of the 4 possible isomers of 2-substituted 1-aminocyclopropyl carboxylic acid

The synthesis was done according to scheme VI.

SCHEME VI





a) Briefly, di-protected malonate **Vla** and 1,2-dihaloalkane **Vlb** or cyclic sulfate **Vlc** (synthesized according to K. Burgess and Chun-Yen KE (Synthesis, (1996), 1463-1467) are reacted under basic conditions to give the diester **Vld**.

5 b) A regioselective hydrolysis of the less hindered ester is performed to give the acid **Vle**.

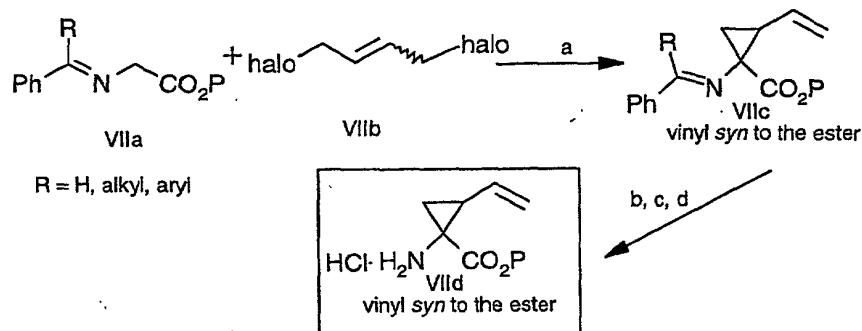
c) This acid **Vle** is subjected to a Curtius rearrangement to give a racemic mixture of 1-aminocyclopropylcarboxylic acid derivatives **VIf** with R^1 being *syn* to the carboxyl group. A specific embodiment for this synthesis is presented in Example 9.

d, e) Alternatively, selective ester formation from the acid **Vle** with an appropriate halide (P^*Cl) or alcohol (P^*OH) forms diester **Vlg** in which the P^* ester is compatible with the selective hydrolysis of the P ester. Hydrolysis of P ester provides acid **Vlh**.

f) A Curtius rearrangement on **Vlh** gives a racemic mixture of 1-aminocyclopropylcarboxylic acid derivatives **VIIi** with R^1 group being *anti* to the carboxyl group. A specific embodiment for this synthesis is presented in Example 14.

An alternative synthesis for the preparation of derivatives **VIf** (when R^1 is vinyl and *syn* to the carboxyl group) is described below.

SCHEME VII



Treatment of commercially available or easily obtainable imines **VIIa** with 1,4-dihalobutene **VIIb** in presence of a base produces, after hydrolysis of the resulting

5 imine **VIIc**, **VIIId** having the allyl substituent *syn* to the carboxyl group. Specific embodiments of this process are presented in Example 15 and 19.

Resolution of all of the above enantiomeric mixtures at carbon 1 (**VIIe** and **VIIId**) can be carried out via:

- 1) enzymatic separation (Examples 13, 17 and 20);
- 10 2) crystallization with a chiral acid (Example 18); or
- 3) chemical derivatization (Example 10).

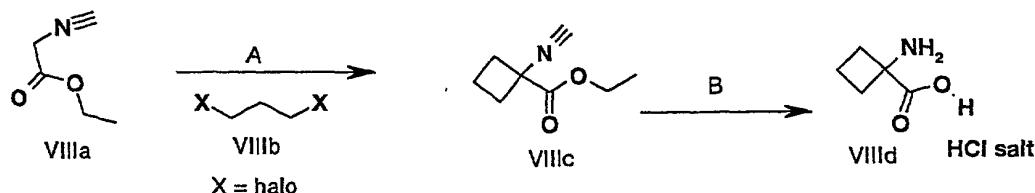
Following resolution, determination of the absolute stereochemistry can be carried out as presented in Example 11.

Enantiomeric resolution and stereochemistry determination can be carried out in the
15 same manner for the enantiomeric mixtures at carbon 1 wherein the substituent at C2 is *anti* to the carboxyl group (**VII**).

3.2 Synthesis of 1-aminocyclobutyl carboxylic acid

The synthesis of 1,1-aminocyclobutanecarboxylic acid is carried out according to "Kavin Douglas ; Ramaligam Kondareddiar ; Woodard Ronald, *Synth. Commun.* 20 (1985), 15 (4), 267-72.

SCHEME VIII

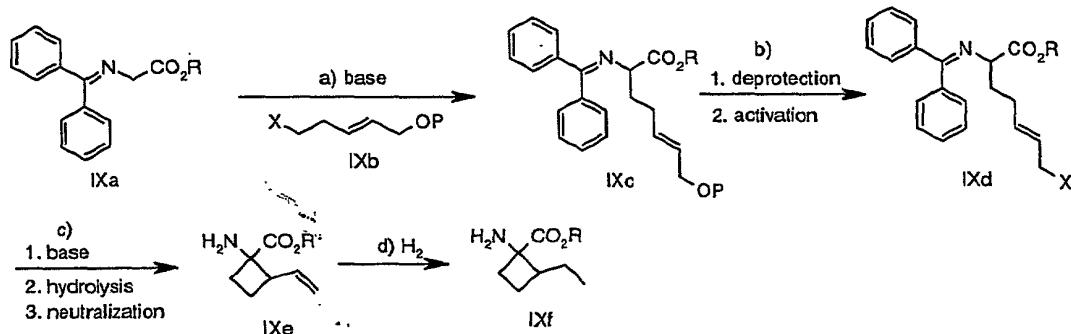


Briefly, treatment of compound **VIIia** with a base in the presence of **VIIib** gives the corresponding cyclobutyl derivative **VIIic**. Hydrolysis of the isocyanate and ester

groups of **VIIIc** under acidic conditions (HCl) yields the hydrochloride salt of the 1-amino-cyclobutylcarboxylic acid **VIIId**. The carboxylic acid is later esterified under methanol in HCl. A specific embodiment of this esterification is described in Example 21.

5 3.3 Synthesis of 2-substituted 1-aminocyclobutyl carboxylic acid

SCHEME IX



a) A protected glycine ester derivative such as imine **IXa** is alkylated with an homoallylic electrophile **IXb** using an appropriate base such as a metal hydride, hydroxide or alkoxide. Useful leaving groups in **IXb** include halogens ($X = \text{Cl}, \text{Br}, \text{I}$) or sulfonate esters (mesylate, tosylate or triflate). The allylic alcohol functionality in **IXb** is protected with hydroxyl protecting groups well known in the art (e.g. acetate, silyl, acetals).

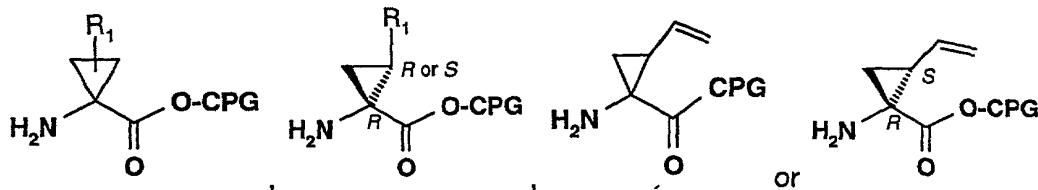
10 b) In a second step, the hydroxyl function of monoalkylated derivative **IXc** is deprotected and converted to a suitable electrophilic function X such as described above for compound **IXb**.

15 c) Cyclization of **IXd** to cyclobutane derivative **IXe** is carried out by treatment with a base (metal hydrides, alkoxides); followed by hydrolysis using aqueous mineral acids and neutralization with a mild base. At this stage, *syn* and *anti*-isomers of **IXe** can be separated by flash chromatography.

20 d) Optionally, the double bond in **IXe** can also be hydrogenated under standard conditions to yield the corresponding saturated derivative **IXf**.

The invention further comprises a process for the preparation of a peptide analog of formula (I) wherein P1 is a substituted aminocyclopropyl carboxylic acid residue, comprising the step of:

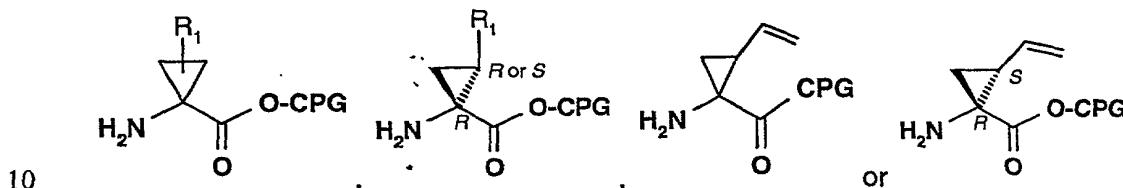
- coupling a peptide selected from the group consisting of: APG-P3-P2; or APG-P2;
- with a P1 intermediate of formula:



wherein R_1 is C_{1-6} alkyl, cycloalkyl or C_{2-6} alkenyl, all optionally substituted with halogen, CPG is a carboxyl protecting group and APG is an amino protecting group and P3 and P2 are as defined above.

5 The invention further comprises a process for the preparation of: 1)a serine protease inhibitor peptide analog, or 2) a HCV NS3 protease inhibitor peptide analog, this process comprising the step of:

- coupling a (suitably protected) amino acid, peptide or peptide fragment with a P1 intermediate of formula:

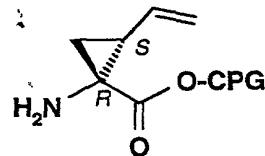


10 wherein R_1 is C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{3-7} cycloalkyl or C_{2-6} alkenyl, all optionally substituted with halogen, and CPG is a carboxyl protecting group.

The invention therefore comprises a process for the preparation of: 1) a protease inhibitor peptide analog, or 2) a serine protease inhibitor peptide analog, this process comprising the step of:

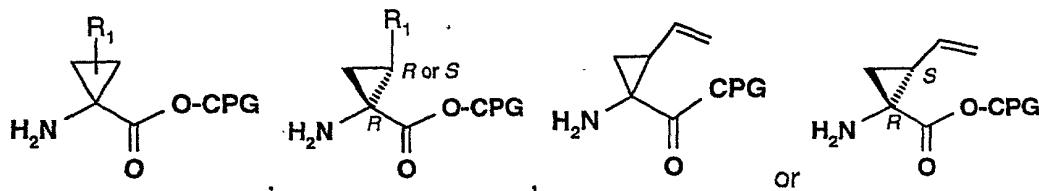
15

- coupling a (suitably protected) amino acid, peptide or peptide fragment with an intermediate of formula:



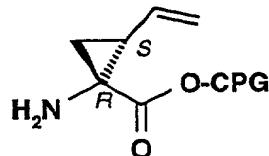
wherein CPG is a carboxyl protecting group.

20 The invention also comprises the use of a P1 intermediate of formula:



wherein \mathbf{R}_1 is C_{1-6} alkyl, cycloalkyl or C_{2-6} alkenyl, all optionally substituted with halogen, for the preparation of: 1) a serine protease inhibitor peptide analog, or 2) a HCV NS3 protease inhibitor peptide analog.

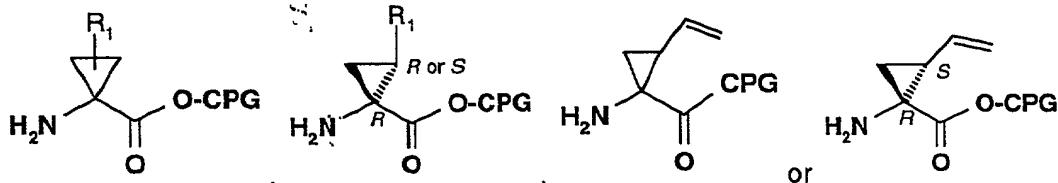
The invention also comprises the use of an intermediate of formula:



5

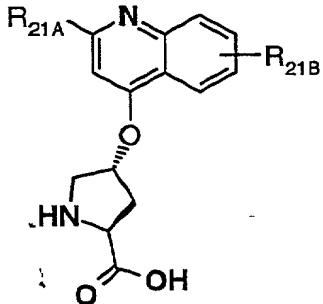
wherein CPG is a carboxyl protecting group, for the preparation of: 1) a protease inhibitor peptide analog, or 2) a serine protease inhibitor peptide analog.

The invention also comprises the use of a P1 intermediate of formula:



10 wherein \mathbf{R}_1 is C_{1-6} alkyl, cycloalkyl or C_{2-6} alkenyl, all optionally substituted with halogen, for the preparation of a compound of formula I as defined above.

Finally, the invention also comprises the use of a proline analog of formula:



15 wherein \mathbf{R}_{21A} is C_{1-6} alkyl; C_{1-6} alkoxy; lower thioalkyl; halo; amino optionally mono-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; C_6 , C_{10} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl or Het, said aryl, aralkyl or Het optionally substituted with \mathbf{R}_{22} wherein \mathbf{R}_{22} is C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, or Het, and \mathbf{R}_{21B} is C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, amino, di(lower alkyl)amino, (lower alkyl)amide, NO_2 , OH, halo, trifluoromethyl, or carboxyl;

20 for the synthesis of 1) a serine protease inhibitor peptide analog, 2) a HCV NS3 protease inhibitor peptide analog, or 3) a peptide analog of formula I as defined above.

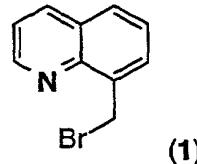
EXAMPLES

The present invention is illustrated in further detail by the following non-limiting examples.

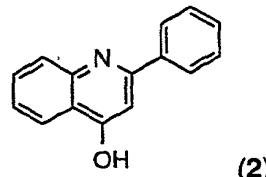
5 Temperatures are given in degrees Celsius. Solution percentages express a weight to volume relationship, and solution ratios express a volume to volume relationship, unless stated otherwise. Nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) spectra were recorded on a Bruker 400 MHz spectrometer; the chemical shifts (δ) are reported in parts per million. Flash chromatography was carried out on silica gel (SiO_2)
10 according to Still's flash chromatography technique (W.C. Still et al., J. Org. Chem., (1978), 43, 2923).

Abbreviations used in the examples include Bn: benzyl; Boc: *tert*-butyloxycarbonyl {Me₃COC(O)}; BSA: bovine serum albumin; CHAPS: 3-[(3-cholamidopropyl)-dimethylammonio]-1-propanesulfonate; DBU: 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene;
15 CH₂Cl₂= DCM: methylene chloride; DEAD: diethylazodicarboxylate; DIAD: diisopropylazodicarboxylate; DIEA: diisopropylethylamine; DIPEA: diisopropylethylamine; DMAP: dimethylaminopyridine; DCC: 1,3-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide; DME: 1,2-dimethoxyethane; DMF: dimethylformamide; DMSO: dimethylsulfoxide; DTT: dithiothreitol or threo-1,4-dimercapto-2,3-butanediol;
20 DPPA: diphenylphosphoryl azide; EDTA: ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid; Et: ethyl; EtOH: ethanol; EtOAc: ethyl acetate; Et₂O: diethyl ether; HATU: [O-7-azabenzotriazol-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetramethyluronium hexafluorophosphate]; HPLC: high performance liquid chromatography; MS: mass spectrometry (MALDI-TOF: Matrix Assisted Laser Disorption Ionization-Time of Flight, FAB: Fast Atom Bombardment);
25 LAH: lithium aluminum hydride; Me: methyl; MeOH: methanol; MES: (2-{N-morpholino}ethane-sulfonic acid); NaHMDS: sodium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide; NMM: N-methylmorpholine; NMP: N-methylpyrrolidine; Pr: propyl; Succ: 3-carboxypropanoyl; PNA: 4-nitrophenylamino or p-nitroanilide; TBAF: tetra-n-butylammonium fluoride; TBTU: 2-(1H-benzotriazole-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetramethyluronium tetrafluoroborate; TCEP: tris(2-carboxyethyl) phosphine hydrochloride; TFA: trifluoroacetic acid; THF: tetrahydrofuran; TIS: triisopropylsilane; TLC: thin layer chromatography; TMSE: trimethylsilylethyl; Tris/HCl: tris(hydroxymethyl)aminomethane hydrochloride.

P2 BUILDING BLOCKS

EXAMPLE 1**Synthesis of bromomethyl-8-quinoline (1):**

5 To commercially available 8-quinoline carboxylic acid (2.5 g, 14.4 mmol) was added neat thionyl chloride (10 mL, 144 mmol). This mixture was heated at 80°C for 1 h before the excess thionyl chloride was distilled off under reduced pressure. To the resulting brownish solid was added absolute EtOH (15 mL) which was heated at 80°C for 1 h before being concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was partitioned
 10 between EtOAc and saturated aqueous NaHCO₃, and the organic phase dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated to give a brownish oil (2.8 g). This material (ca. 14.4 mmol) was added dropwise over 35 min to a LAH (0.76 g, 20.2 mmol)/Et₂O suspension which was cooled to -60°C. The reaction mixture was slowly warmed to -35°C over 1.5 h before the reaction was complete. The reaction was quenched
 15 with MgSO₄·10H₂O slowly over 30 min and then wet THF. The mixture was partitioned between Et₂O and 10% aqueous NaHCO₃. The organic phase was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated to give a yellowish solid (2.31 g, 80% over 2 steps) corresponding to the alcohol. The alcohol (2.3 g, 11.44 mmol) was dissolved in AcOH/HBr (20 mL, 30% solution from Aldrich) and heated at 70°C for 2.5 h. The
 20 mixture was concentrated *in vacuo* to dryness, partitioned between EtOAc (100 mL) and saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ before being dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated to give the desired compound (1) as a brownish solid (2.54 g, 100%).

EXAMPLE 2**Synthesis of 2-phenyl-4-hydroxyquinoline (2):**

25 Commercially available ethyl benzoylacetate (6.00 g, 31.2 mmol) was heated at

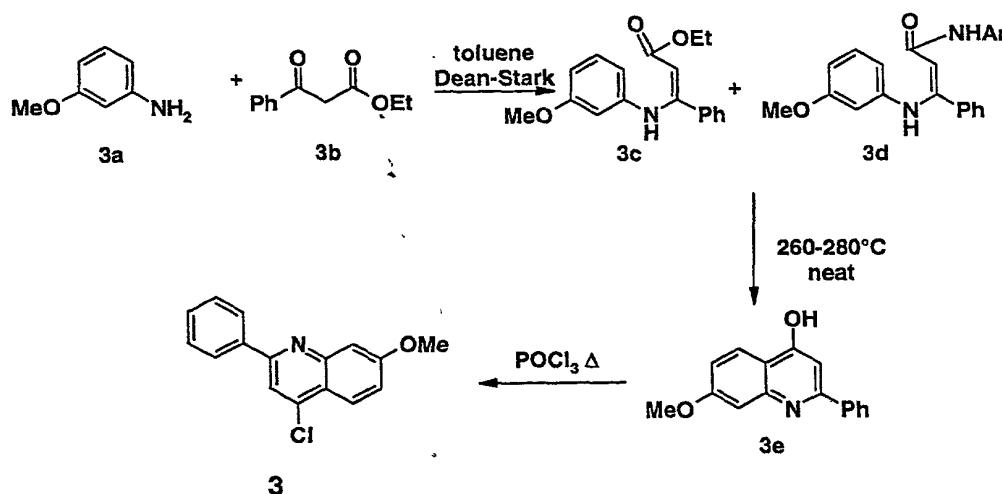
85°C (sealed tube) in 75 mL of 30% NH₄OH for 2 hours. The solid formed upon cooling was filtered and refluxed in water for 2 hours. The solution was extracted three times with CH₂Cl₂. The organic layers were combined, dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated. The yellow residue was flash chromatographed on silica gel, eluting with EtOAc:hexane (3:7), to give the corresponding amide as a white solid, 1.60 g, 31% yield.

This amide (250 mg, 1.53 mmol) was refluxed using a Dean-Stark apparatus with aniline (143 mg, 1.53 mmol) and aniline•HCl (10 mg, 0.08 mmol) in toluene (10 mL) for 16 h. The solution was concentrated to afford a brown oil that was mixed with polyphosphoric acid (2 g) and heated at 135°C for 20 min. The reaction mixture was poured into water and adjusted to pH 8 with 5 M NaOH. The aqueous suspension was extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined, washed with brine, dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated. The residue was flash chromatographed on silica gel, eluting with 3% MeOH in ethyl acetate, to give 2-phenyl-4-hydroxyquinoline (**2**), 67 mg, 20% yield.

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 8.11 (d, J = 7 Hz, 1 H), 7.86-7.83 (m, 2 H), 7.77 (d, J = 8 Hz, 1 H), 7.68 (dd, J = 8, 7 Hz, 1 H), 7.61-7.58 (m, 3 H), 7.35 (dd, J = 8, 7 Hz, 1 H), 6.34 (s, 1 H).

EXAMPLE 3

20 Synthesis of 4-hydroxy-2-phenyl -7-methoxyquinoline (**3**)



4-hydroxy-2-phenyl -7-methoxyquinoline (**e**):

A solution of ethyl benzoylacetate (**b**) (100.0 g, 0.52 mol), m-anisidine (**a**) (128.1 g, 1.04 mol) and 4 N HCl / dioxane (5:2 mL) in toluene (1.0 L) was refluxed for 6.25 h

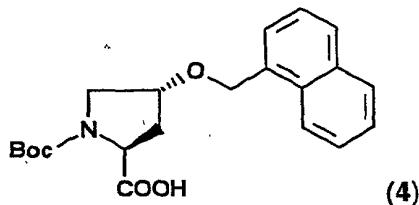
in a Dean-Stark apparatus. The cooled toluene solution was successively washed with aqueous 10% HCl (2×300 mL), 1 N NaOH (2×300 mL), H₂O (300 mL) and brine (150 mL). The toluene phase was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to give a 1.2:1.0 mixture of ester **c** and amide **d** (144.6 g, 5 45% / 38% crude yield) as a dark brown oil. The crude oil was heated to 280 °C for 80 min while distilling generated EtOH. The cooled dark solid obtained was triturated with CH₂Cl₂ (200 mL). The suspension was filtered and the resulting solid washed with CH₂Cl₂ to give **e** (22.6 g, 17% from **a**) as a beige solid: ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 8.00 (d, J = 9.0 Hz, 1H), 7.81-7.82 (m, 2H), 7.57-7.59 (m, 3H), 7.20 (d, 10 J = 2.2 Hz, 1H), 6.94 (dd, J = 9.0, 2.2 Hz, 1H), 6.26 (s, 1H), 3.87 (s, 3H).

4-Chloro-2-phenyl-7-methoxyquinoline (3):

A suspension of **e** (8.31 g, 33.1 mmol) in POCl₃ (90 mL) was heated to reflux for 2 h (clear solution obtained upon heating). The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was partitioned between 1 N NaOH (exothermic, 10 N NaOH added to maintain high pH) and EtOAc (500 mL). The 15 organic layer was washed with H₂O (100 mL) and brine (100 mL) then was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to give **3** (8.60 g, 96%) as a pale yellow solid: ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 8.28-8.30 (m, 2H), 8.20 (s, 1H), 8.10 (d, J = 9.1 Hz, 1H), 7.54-7.58 (m, 3H), 7.52 (d, J = 2.5 Hz, 1H), 7.38 (dd, J = 9.1, 2.5 20 Hz, 1H), 3.98 (s, 3H). This reaction was repeated three times and gave always 96-98% yield which is significantly higher than the 68% yield reported in J. Med. Chem. 1997, 40, 1794.

EXAMPLE 4

Synthesis of Boc-4(*R*)-(naphthalen-1-ylmethoxy) proline (4):

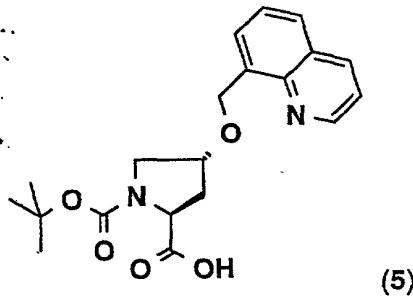


Commercially available Boc-4(*R*)-hydroxyproline (5.00 g, 21.6 mmol) was dissolved in THF (100 mL) and cooled to 0°C. Sodium hydride (60% dispersion in oil, 1.85 g, 45.4 mmol) was added portionwise over 10 minutes and the suspension was stirred at RT for 1 h. Then, 1-(bromomethyl)naphthalene (8.00 g, 36.2 mmol) (prepared as 30 described in E.A. Dixon et al. Can. J. Chem., (1981), 59, 2629-2641) was added and

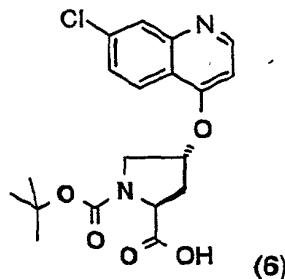
the mixture was heated at reflux for 18 h. The mixture was poured into water (300 mL) and washed with hexane. The aqueous layer was acidified with 10% aqueous HCl and extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined and washed with brine, dried (MgSO_4), filtered and concentrated. The residue was
 5 purified by flash chromatography (49:49:2 hexane: ethyl acetate: acetic acid) to give the title compound as a colorless oil (4.51 g, 56% yield). ^1H NMR (DMSO-d_6) indicated the presence of two rotamers: δ 8.05 (m, 1H), 7.94 (m, 1H), 7.29 (d, $J=14$ Hz, 1H), 7.55-7.45 (m, 4H), 4.96 (m, 2H), 4.26 (br. s, 1H), 4.12 (dd, $J=J=8$ Hz, 1H), 3.54-3.42 (m, 2H), 2.45-2.34 (m, 1H), 2.07-1.98 (m, 1H) 1.36 (s, (3/9) 9H), 1.34 (s, 10 (6/9) 9H).

EXAMPLE 5

Synthesis of Boc-4(R)-(8-quinoline-methoxy) proline (5):



Boc-4(R)-hydroxyproline (1.96 g, 8.5 mmol) in anhydrous THF (20 mL) was added
 15 to a suspension of NaH (1.4 g, 60% in oil, 34 mmol) in THF (100 mL). This mixture was stirred 30 min before bromomethyl-8-quinoline from Example 1 (2.54 g, 11.44 mmol) was added in THF (30 mL). The reaction mixture was heated at 70°C (5 h) before the excess NaH was destroyed carefully with wet THF. The reaction was concentrated *in vacuo* and the resulting material was dissolved in EtOAc and H_2O .
 20 The basic aqueous phase was separated and acidified with 10% aqueous HCl to pH ~5 before being extracted with EtOAc (150 mL). The organic phase was dried (MgSO_4), filtered and concentrated to give a brown oil. Purification by flash chromatography (eluent: 10% MeOH/CHCl₃) gave the desired compound (5) as a pale yellow solid (2.73 g, 86%). HPLC (97.5%); $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO-d_6) shows rotamer populations in a 6:4 ratio, δ 12-11.4 (bs, 1H), 8.92 (2 x d, $J = 4.14$ and 4.14 Hz, 1H), 8.38 (2 x d, $J = 8.27$ and 8.27 Hz, 1H), 7.91 (d, $J = 7.94$ Hz, 1H), 7.77 (d, $J = 7.0$ Hz, 1H), 7.63-7.54 (m, 2H), 5.14 (2 x s, 2H), 4.32-4.29 (m, 1H), 4.14-4.07 (m, 1H), 3.52-3.44 (m, 2H), 2.43-2.27 (m, 1H), 2.13-2.04 (m, 1H), 1.36 and 1.34 (2 x s, 9H).

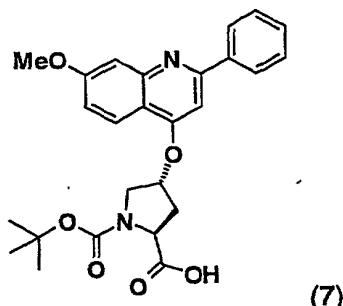
EXAMPLE 6**Preparation of Boc-4(R)-(7-chloroquinoline-4-oxo)proline (6):**

Commercially available Boc-4(S)-hydroxyproline methyl ester (500 mg, 2.04 mmol) and 7-chloro-4-hydroxyquinoline (440 mg, 2.45 mmol) were placed in dry THF (10 mL) at 0°C. Triphenylphosphine (641 mg, 2.95 mmol) was added, followed by slow addition of DIAD (426 mg, 2.45 mmol). The mixture was stirred at RT for 20 h. The reaction mixture was then concentrated, taken up in ethyl acetate and extracted three times with HCl 1N. The aqueous phase was basified with Na₂CO₃ and extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined, dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated to give a yellow oil. The oil was purified by flash chromatography to give the methyl ester as a white solid, 498 mg, 58% yield. This methyl ester (400 mg, 0.986 mmol) was hydrolyzed with 1M aqueous sodium hydroxide (1.7 mL, 1.7 mmol) in methanol (4 mL), at 0°C, for 3 h. The solution was concentrated to remove the methanol and neutralized with 1M aqueous HCl. The suspension was concentrated to dryness and taken up in methanol (20 mL), the salts were filtered off and the filtrate concentrated to give the desired compound (6) as a white solid, 387 mg, quant. yield.

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) (ca. 1:1 mixture of rotamers) δ 8.74 (d, J = 5 Hz, 1 H), 8.13-8.09 (m, 1 H), 7.99 and 7.98 (s, 1 H), 7.58 (d, J = 9 Hz, 1 H), 7.02 (d, J = 5 Hz, 1 H), 5.26-5.20 (m, 1 H), 4.10-4.01 (m, 1 H), 3.81-3.72 (m, 1 H), 3.59 (dd, J = 12, 10 Hz, 1 H), 2.41-2.31 (m, 2 H), 1.34 and 1.31 (s, 9H).

EXAMPLE 7**Synthesis of Boc-4(R)-(2-phenyl-7-methoxyquinoline-4-oxo) proline (7):**

006260 006261 006262 006263 006264 006265 006266 006267 006268 006269



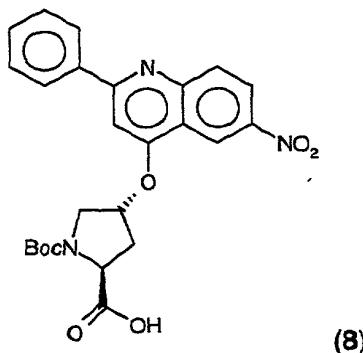
(7)

Boc-4(R)-(2-phenyl-7-methoxyquinoline-4-oxo) proline (7):

Potassium tert-butoxide (8.16 g, 72.7 mmol) was added in small portions, over 15 min, to a solution of Boc-4(R)-hydroxy proline (6.73 g, 29.1 mmol) in DMSO (83 mL) maintained at 25 °C. The mixture was stirred at 25 °C for 1.5 h. Chloro-2-phenyl-7-methoxyquinoline 3 (8.61 g, 32.0 mmol) was added in 4 portions over 15 min to the reaction mixture. The reaction mixture was stirred at 25 °C for 19 h. The resulting suspension was poured in H₂O (650 mL) and the mixture was washed with Et₂O (3 × 150 mL) to remove excess chloroquinoline (EtOAc was later found to be more efficient). The aqueous layer was acidified with aqueous 1 N HCl (38 mL of calculated 1.5 equiv. required, 43.6 mL) to pH 4 – 5. The white solid that precipitated was recovered by filtration. The moist solid was dried under reduced pressure over P₂O₅ to give the proline derivative 7 (12.6 g, 91%, contains 2.3% w/w of DMSO) as a beige solid:

15 ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ (2:1 mixture of rotamers) 8.27 (d, J = 7.0 Hz, 2H), 8.00, 7.98 (2d, J = 9.2, ~9.2 Hz, 1H), 7.48-7.56 (m, 3H), 7.45, 7.43 (2s, 1H), 7.39 (d, J = 2.5 Hz, 1H), 7.17 (dd, J = 9.2, 2.5 Hz, 1H), 5.53-5.59 (m, 1H), 4.34-4.41 (m, 1H), 3.93 (s, 3H), 3.76 (broad s, 2H), 2.63-2.73 (m, 1H), 2.32-2.43 (m, 1H), 1.36, 1.33 (2s, 9H).

20 EXAMPLE 8**Synthesis of Boc-4(R)-(2-phenyl-6-nitroquinoline-4-oxo) proline (8):**



Diethyl azodicarboxylate (0.77 mL, 4.89 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of triphenylphosphine (1.28 g, 4.88 mmol) in 15 mL of tetrahydrofuran at 0°C. After 30 min. of stirring under nitrogen a solution of Boc-4(S)-hydroxyproline methyl ester (1.00 g, 4.08 mmol) was added in 5 mL of tetrahydrofuran followed by a suspension of commercially available 6-nitro-2-phenyl-4-quinolinol (1.30 g, 4.88 mmol) in 10 mL of the same solvent. The red mixture was stirred for 15 min. at 0°C and at RT overnight. The solvent was evaporated *in vacuo*. The remaining oil was diluted in ethyl acetate and washed twice with sodium bicarbonate, once with water and once with brine. The organic layer was dried (MgSO_4), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo*. The residue was chromatographed over silica gel (70:30 v/v, hexanes-ethyl acetate) affording the desired methyl ester as a light yellow solid (1.70 g, 85%).

$^1\text{H NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3)$ rotamers \cong 3:7 δ 9.03 (d, $J = 2.5$ Hz, 1H), 8.46 (dd, $J = 9, 2.5$ Hz, 1H), 8.18 (d, $J = 9$ Hz, 1H), 8.14-8.07 (m, 2H), 7.59-7.50 (m, 3H), 7.19 (s, 1H), 5.39-5.30 (m, 1H), 4.67 (t, $J = 8$ Hz, 0.3H), 4.61 (t, $J = 8$ Hz, 0.7H), 4.07-4.01 (m, 2H), 3.81 (s, 3H), 2.89-2.73 (m, 1H), 2.55-2.47 (m, 1H), 1.49 (s, 2.7H), 1.45 (s, 6.3H).

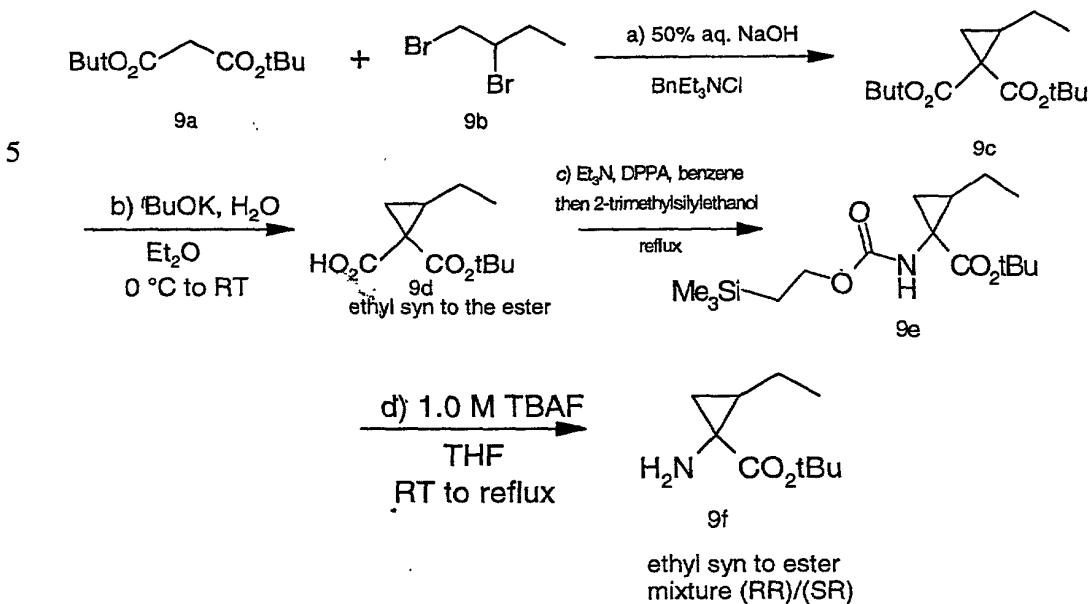
To a solution of the methyl ester (503 mg, 1.02 mmol) in a mixture of THF: H_2O (10:4 mL) was added lithium hydroxide monohydrate (85 mg, 2.05 mmol). 2 mL of MeOH was added in order to get an homogeneous solution. A white precipitate resulted within 30 min. The resulting suspension was stirred at RT for an additional 6 h. The reaction mixture was diluted with an aqueous solution of citric acid 10% and extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was dried (MgSO_4), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to afford 416 mg (85%) of the desired acid (8).

$^1\text{H NMR}(\text{DMSO-d}_6)$: δ 8.92-8.87 (m, 1H), 8.47 (dd, $J = 9, 3$ Hz, 1H), 8.38-8.32 (m, 2H), 8.19 (d, $J = 9$ Hz, 1H), 7.77 (s, 1H), 7.62-7.55 (m, 3H), 5.73-5.66 (m, 1H), 4.41 (t, $J = 8$ Hz, 1H), 3.89-3.76 (m, 2H), 2.83-2.72 (m, 1H), 2.47-2.35 (m, 1H), 1.38 (s, 9H).

P1 BUILDING BLOCKS

EXAMPLE 9

A) Synthesis of mixture of (*1R*, *2R*)/(*1S*, *2R*) 1-amino-2-ethylcyclopropyl carboxylic acid



a) To a suspension of benzyltriethylammonium chloride (21.0 g, 92.19 mmol) in a 50% aqueous NaOH solution (92.4 g in 185 mL H₂O) were successively added di-*tert*-butylmalonate (20.0 g, 92.47 mmol) and 1,2-dibromobutane (30.0 g, 138.93 mmol). The reaction mixture was vigorously stirred overnight at RT, a mixture of ice and water was then added. The crude product was extracted with CH₂Cl₂ (3x) and sequentially washed with water (3x) and brine. The organic layer was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated. The residue was flash chromatographed (7 cm, 2 to 4 % Et₂O in hexane) to afford the desired cyclopropane derivative **9c** (19.1 g, 70.7 mmol, 76% yield). ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 1.78-1.70 (m, 1H), 1.47 (s, 9H), 1.46 (s, 9H), 1.44-1.39 (m, 1H), 1.26-1.64 (m, 3H), 1.02 (t, 3H, J= 7.6 Hz).

b) To a suspension of potassium *tert*-butoxide (6.71g, 59.79 mmol, 4.4 eq.) in dry ether (100 mL) at 0°C was added H₂O (270 μL, 15.00 mmol, 1.1 eq.). After 5 min diester **9c** (3.675 g, 13.59 mmol) in ether (10 mL) was added to the suspension. The reaction mixture was stirred overnight at RT, then poured in a mixture of ice and water and washed with ether (3x). The aqueous layer was acidified with a 10% aq. citric acid solution at 0°C and extracted with AcOEt (3x). The combined organic

layer was successively washed with water (2x) and brine. After the usual treatment (Na_2SO_4 , filtration, concentration), the desired acid **9d** was isolated as a pale yellow oil (1.86g, 8.68 mmol, 64% yield). ^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 2.09-2.01 (m, 1H), 1.98 (dd, $J=3.8, 9.2$ Hz, 1H), 1.81-1.70 (m, 1H), 1.66 (dd, $J=3.0, J=8.2$ Hz, 1H), 1.63-1.56 (m, 1H), 1.51 (s, 9H), 1.0 (t, $J=7.3$ Hz, 3H).

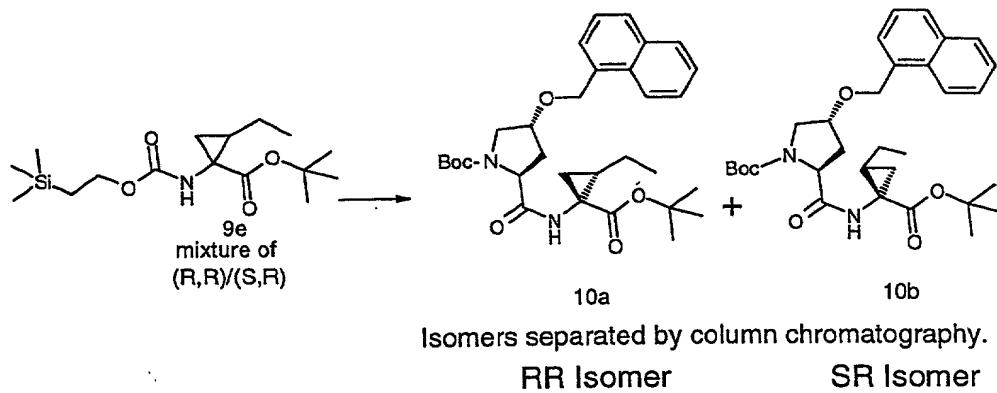
5 c) To the acid **9d** (2.017 g, 9.414 mmol) in dry benzene (32 mL) were successively added Et_3N (1.50 mL, 10.76 mmol, 1.14 eq.) and DPPA (2.20 mL, 10.21 mmol, 1.08 eq.). The reaction mixture was refluxed for 3.5 h then 2-trimethylsilylethanol (2.70 mL, 18.84 mmol, 2.0 eq.) was added. The reflux was maintained overnight then the 10 reaction mixture was diluted with Et_2O and successively washed with a 10 % aqueous citric acid solution, water, saturated aqueous NaHCO_3 , water (2x) and brine. After the usual treatment (MgSO_4 , filtration, concentration) the residue was purified by flash chromatography (5 cm, 10% AcOEt- hexane) to afford the desired carbamate **9e** (2.60 g, 7.88 mmol, 84% yield) as a pale yellow oil. MS (FAB) 330 (MH $^+$); ^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 5.1 (bs, 1H), 4.18-4.13 (m, 2H), 1.68-1.38 (m, 4H), 1.45 (s, 9H), 1.24-1.18 (m, 1H), 1.00-0.96 (m, 5H), 0.03 (s, 9H).

15 d) To carbamate **9e** (258 mg, 0.783 mmol) was added a 1.0 M TBAF solution in THF (940 μL , 0.94 mmol, 1.2 eq.). After 4.5 h an additional amount of 1.0 M TBAF was added (626 μL , 0.63 mmol, 0.8 eq.). The reaction mixture was stirred overnight at 20 RT, refluxed for 30 min and then diluted with AcOEt. The solution was successively washed with water (2x) and brine. After the usual treatment (MgSO_4 , filtration and concentration) the desired amine **9f** was isolated (84 mg, 0.453 mmol, 58 % yield) as a pale yellow liquid. ^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 1.96 (bs, 2H), 1.60-1.40 (m, 2H), 1.47 (s, 9H), 1.31-1.20 (m, 1H), 1.14 (dd, $J=4.1, 7.3$ Hz, 1H), 1.02 (dd, $J=4.1, 9.2$ Hz, 1H), 0.94 (t, $J=7.3$ Hz, 3H).

25

EXAMPLE 10

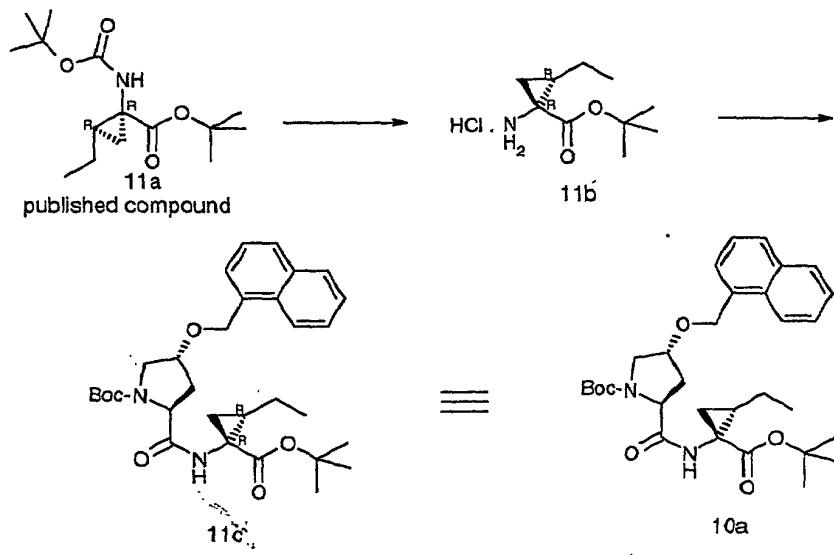
Chemical resolution of *t*-butyl-(1*R*, 2*R*)/(1*S*, 2*R*) 1-amino-2-ethylcyclopropyl carboxylate (from Example 9):



Compound **9e** from Example 9 (8.50 g , 25.86 mmol) was treated with 1M TBAF/THF (26 mL) at reflux for 45 min. The cooled reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc, washed with water (3x) and brine (1x), then, dried (MgSO_4), filtered and evaporated to provide the free amine as a light yellow oil. The free amine was dissolved in anhydrous CH_2Cl_2 (120 mL) , NMM (8.5 mL , 77.57 mmol), compound **4** (Example 4) (10.08 g, 27.15 mmol) and HATU (11.79 g , 31.03 mmol) were added successively. The reaction mixture was stirred at RT overnight, then worked up as described previously. The crude diastereomeric mixture was separated by flash chromatography (eluent – hexane : Et_2O ; 25 : 75) to provide the dipeptide **10a** (the less polar eluting spot) as a white foam (4.42 g ; 64% of the theoretical yield) and **10b** (the more polar eluting spot) as an ivory foam (4 g., 57% of theoretical yield). At this time both isomers were separated but the absolute stereochemistry was still not known.

EXAMPLE 11

Determination of the absolute stereochemistry of compounds **10a and **10b** by correlation with known t-butyl-(1*R*-amino-2*R*-ethylcyclopropyl carboxylate**

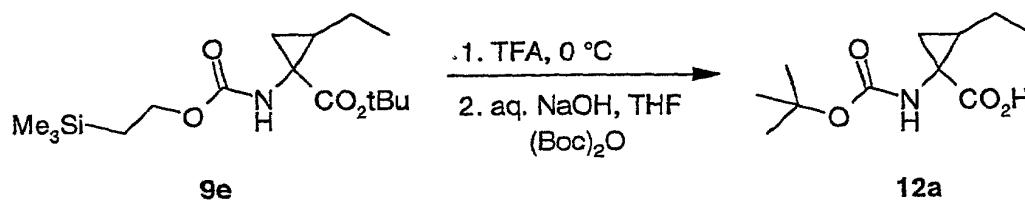


Direct comparison by TLC, HPLC and NMR

Prof . A. Charette , from the University of Montreal , provided compound **11a** having the absolute stereochemistry as shown, which was determined by X-ray crystallography (J. Am. Chem. Soc., 1995, 117, 12721) . Compound **11a** (13.2 mg, 0.046 mmol) was dissolved in 1M HCl/EtOAc (240 μ L) and stirred approximately 48 hours. The mixture was evaporated to dryness to provide compound **11b** as a light yellow paste and was coupled to compound **4** (18 mg , 0.049 mmol) as described in Example 10, using NMM (20.3 μ L , 0.185 mmol) and HATU (21.1 mg , 0.056 mmol) in CH_2Cl_2 . The crude material was purified by flash chromatography (eluent – hexane : Et_2O ; 50:50) to provide the dipeptide **11c** as an oil (7.7 mg ; 31%). By TLC, HPLC and NMR comparison , dipeptide **11c**, was found to be identical to the less polar compound **10a** obtained in Example 10, thus identifying the absolute stereochemistry of **10a** as (*1R,2R*).

EXAMPLE 12

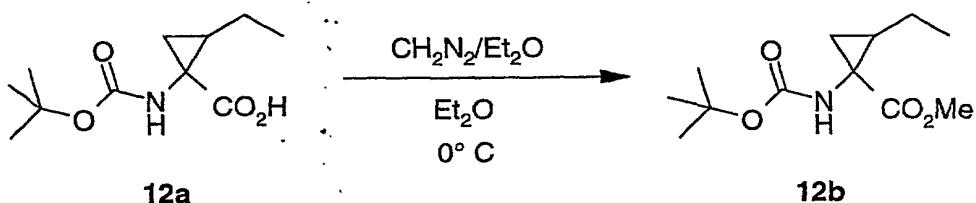
15 Preparation of (*1R, 2R*)/(*1S, 2R*) 1-Boc-amino-2-ethylcyclopropylcarboxylic acid: (12a)



The carbamate **9e** from Example 9 (2.6 g, 7.88 mmol) was stirred for 40 min in TFA

at 0 °C. The mixture was then concentrated and diluted with THF (10 mL). An aqueous NaOH solution (700 mg, 17.5 mmol in 8.8 mL of H₂O) was added followed by a THF (13 mL) solution of (Boc)₂O (2.06 g, 9.44 mmol, 1.2 eq.). The reaction mixture was stirred overnight at RT (the pH was maintained at 8 by adding a 10 % aqueous NaOH solution when needed), then diluted with H₂O, washed with Et₂O (3X) and acidified at 0 °C with a 10 % aq. citric acid solution. The aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (3X) and successively washed with H₂O (2X) and brine. After the usual treatment (MgSO₄, filtration and concentration) the desired Boc-protected amino acid (**12a**) (788 mg, 3.44 mmol, 44 % yield) was isolated. ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 5 5.18 (bs, 1H), 1.64-1.58 (m, 2H), 1.55-1.42 (m, 2H), 1.45 (s, 9H), 1.32-1.25 (m, 1H), 10 0.99 (t, 3H, J = 7.3 Hz).

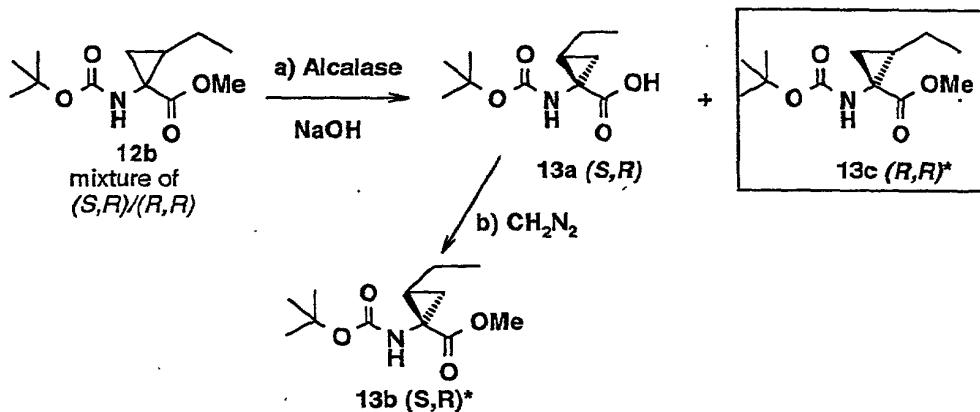
Preparation of (*1R*, *2R*)/(*1S*, *2R*)-1-Boc-amino-2-ethylcyclopropylcarboxylic acid methyl ester: (12b)



15 The Boc derivative **12a** (0.30 g, 1.31 mmol) was dissolved in Et₂O (10 mL) and
 treated with freshly prepared diazomethane in Et₂O at 0 °C until the yellow color of a
 slight excess of diazomethane remained. After stirring for 20 min at RT the reaction
 mixture was concentrated to dryness to give **12b** as a clear colorless oil (0.32 g,
 100%). ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 5.1 (bs, 1H), 3.71 (s, 3H), 1.62-1.57 (m, 2H), 1.55 (s, 9H),
 20 1.53-1.43 (m, 1H), 1.28-1.21 (m, 2H), 0.95 (t, J = 7.3 Hz, 3H).

EXAMPLE 13

Enzymatic resolution of methyl (1*R*, 2*R*)/(1*S*, 2*R*) Boc-1-amino-2-ethylcyclopropyl carboxylate:



*Analysis by HPLC using Chiralcel® OD-H column

** Other esters also acceptable (eg. Et)

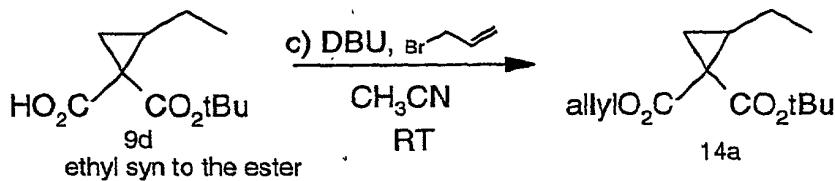
a) The enantiomeric mixture of $(1S, 2R)/(1R, 2R)$ 1-Boc-amino-2-ethylcarboxylic acid methyl ester of Example 10 (0.31 g, 1.27 mmol) was dissolved in acetone (3 mL) and then diluted with water (7 mL) while being rapidly stirred. The pH of the solution was adjusted to 7.5 with 0.05M aqueous NaOH before Alcalase® [2.4L extract from Novo Nordisk Industrials] (300 mg) was added. During incubation pH was stabilized with NaOH and a pH stat was set up to monitor the addition of the NaOH solution. After 40 h the mixture was diluted with EtOAc and H_2O (with 5 mL sat. NaHCO_3) and the phases separated. The aqueous phase was acidified with 10% aqueous HCl and extracted with EtOAc, dried (MgSO_4), filtered and concentrated to give acid **13a** (48.5 mg). The absolute stereochemistry was determined using the correlation described in Examples 10 and 11.

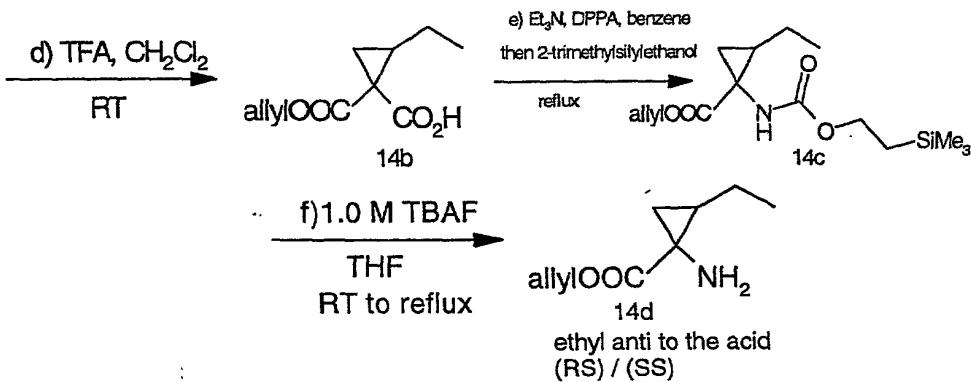
b) Treatment of an aliquot of acid **13a** with diazomethane in Et_2O to give the methyl ester followed by analysis by HPLC using a chiral column [Chiralcel® OD-H, 2.5% Isopropanol/hexane, isocratic] showed a 51:1 ratio of the (S,R) isomer.

15

EXAMPLE 14

Synthesis of $(1R, 2S)/(1S, 2S)$ 1-amino-2-ethylcyclopropyl carboxylic acid:





Starting from acid **9d** described in Example 9:

c) To **9d** (1.023 g, 4.77 mmol) in CH_3CN (25 mL) were successively added DBU (860 μL , 5.75 mmol, 1.2 eq.) and allyl bromide (620 μL , 7.16 mmol, 1.5 eq.). The reaction mixture was stirred for 4 h at RT and then concentrated. The residue was diluted with Et_2O and successively washed with a 10 % aq. citric acid solution (2x), H_2O , saturated aqueous NaHCO_3 , H_2O (2x) and brine. After the usual treatment (MgSO_4 , filtration and concentration) the desired ester **14a** was isolated (1.106 g, 3.35 mmol, 91 % yield) as a colorless oil. MS (FAB) 255 (MH^+); ^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 5.96-5.86 (m, 1H), 5.37-5.22 (m, 2H), 4.70-4.65 (m, 1H), 4.57-4.52 (m, 1H), 1.87-1.79 (m, 1H), 1.47 (s, 9H), 1.45-1.40 (m, 1H), 1.33-1.24 (m, 3H), 1.03 (t, $J=7.3$ Hz, 3H).

d) To ester **14a** (1.106 g, 4.349 mmol) in dry CH_2Cl_2 (5 mL) at RT was added TFA (5 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred for 1.5 h and then concentrated to afford **14b** (854 mg, 4.308 mmol, 99 % yield). MS (FAB) 199 (MH^+); ^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 5.99-5.79 (m, 1H), 5.40-5.30 (m, 2H), 4.71-4.62 (m, 2H), 2.22-2.00 (m, 2H), 1.95-1.88 (m, 1H), 1.84-1.57 (m, 2H), 0.98 (t, $J=7.3$ Hz, 3H).

e) To acid **14b** (853 mg, 4.30 mmol) in dry benzene (14.8 mL) were successively added Et_3N (684 μL , 4.91 mmol, 1.14 eq.) and DPPA (992 μL , 4.60 mmol, 1.07 eq.). The reaction mixture was refluxed for 4.5 h then 2-trimethylsilylethanol (1.23 mL, 8.58 mmol, 2.0 eq.) was added. The reflux was maintained overnight then the reaction mixture was diluted with Et_2O and successively washed with a 10 % aqueous citric acid solution, water, saturated aq. NaHCO_3 , water (2x) and brine.

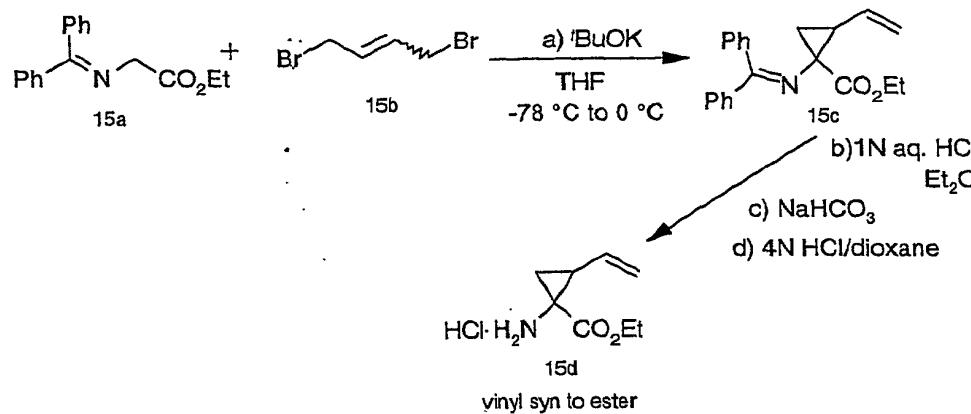
f) After the usual treatment (MgSO_4 , filtration, concentration) the residue was flash chromatographed (5 cm, 10 to 15 % AcOEt-hexane) to afford carbamate **14c** (1.212 g, 3.866 mmol, 90 % yield) as a pale yellow oil. MS (FAB) 314 (MH^+); ^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 5.93-5.84 (m, 1H), 5.32-5.20 (m, 2H), 5.05 (bs, 1H), 4.60-4.56 (m, 2H),

4.20-4.11 (m, 2H), 1.71-1.60 (m, 3H), 1.39-1.22 (m, 1H), 1.03 (t, $J=7.6$ Hz, 3H), 0.96-0.86 (m, 1H), 0.04 (s, 9H).

f) To carbamate **14c** (267 mg, 0.810 mmol) was added a 1.0 M TBAF solution in THF (1.62 mL, 1.62 mmol, 2.0 eq.). The reaction mixture was stirred overnight at 5 RT, refluxed for 30 min and then diluted with AcOEt. The solution was successively washed with water (2x) and brine. After the usual treatment ($MgSO_4$, filtration and concentration) the desired amine **14d** was isolated (122 mg, 0.721 mmol, 89 % yield) as a pale yellow liquid. 1H NMR ($CDCl_3$) δ 5.94-5.86 (m, 1H), 5.31-5.22 (m, 2H), 4.58 (d, $J=5.7$ Hz, 2H), 1.75 (bs, 2H), 1.61-1.53 (m, 2H), 1.51-1.42 (m, 2H), 10 1.00 (t, $J=7.3$ Hz, 3H), 0.70-0.62 (m, 1H).

EXAMPLE 15

Synthesis of ethyl-(1*R*,2*S*)/(1*S*,2*S*)-1-amino-2-vinylcyclopropyl carboxylate:

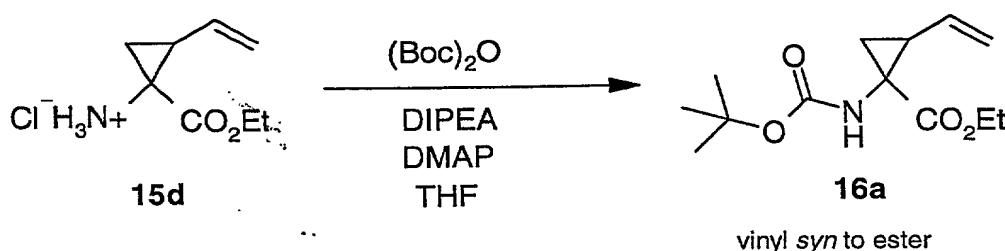


a) To a THF solution (180 mL) of potassium *tert*-butoxide (4.62 g, 41.17 mmol, 1.1 eq.) at -78°C was added commercially available imine **15a** (10.0 g, 37.41 mmol) in THF (45 mL). The reaction mixture was warmed to 0°C and stirred at this temperature for 40 min. The mixture was then cooled back to -78°C for the addition of 1,4-dibromobutene **15b** (8.0 g, 37.40 mmol) and then stirred at 0°C for 1 h and cooled back to -78°C for the addition of potassium *tert*-butoxide (4.62 g, 41.17 mmol, 1.1 eq.). The reaction mixture was finally stirred one more hour at 0°C and concentrated to yield compound **15c**.
b, c, d) **15c** was taken up in Et_2O (265 mL) and treated with a 1N aq. HCl solution (106 mL). After 3.5 h at RT, the layers were separated and the aqueous layer was washed with Et_2O (2x) and basified with a saturated aq. NaHCO_3 solution. The desired amine was extracted with Et_2O (3x) and the combined organic extract was washed with brine. After the usual treatment ($MgSO_4$, filtration and concentration)

the residue was treated with a 4N HCl solution in dioxane (187 mL, 748 mmol). After concentration, hydrochloride salt **15d** was isolated as a brown solid (2.467 g, 12.87 mmol, 34 % yield). ¹H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 9.17 (bs, 3H), 5.75-5.66 (m, 1H), 5.39 (d, $J=17.2$ Hz, 1H), 5.21 (d, $J=10.2$ Hz, 1H), 4.35-4.21 (m, 2H), 2.77-2.70 (m, 1H), 2.05 (dd, $J=6.4, 10.2$ Hz, 1H), 1.75 (dd, $J=6.4, 8.3$ Hz, 1H), 1.33 (t, $J=7.0$ Hz, 3H).

EXAMPLE 16

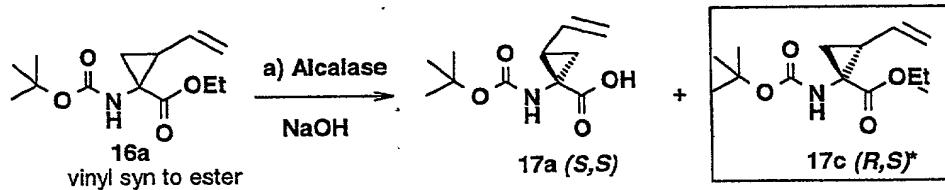
Preparation of (1*R*,2*S*)/(1*S*,2*S*)-1-Boc-amino-2-vinylcyclopropyl carboxylic acid ethyl ester:



10 The hydrochloride salt **15d** (1.0 g, 5.2 mmol) and (Boc)₂O (1.2 g, 5.7 mmol) were dissolved in THF (30 mL) and treated with DMAP (0.13 g, 1.04 mmol, 0.2 equiv.) and diisopropylethylamine (2.8 mL, 15.6 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred 24 h before being diluted with EtOAc (40 mL) and washed successively with sat. NaHCO₃ (aq), 5% aqueous HCl, and sat. brine. The organic phase was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated to give after purification by flash chromatography (15% EtOAc/hexane), **16a** (0.29 g, 23%). ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 5.80-5.72 (m, 1H), 5.29-5.25 (dd, J = 17.2, 17.2 Hz, 1H), 5.24-5.1 (bs, 1H), 5.10 (dd, J = 9.2, 9.2 Hz, 1H), 4.22-4.13 (m, 2H), 2.15-2.04 (m, 1H), 1.85-1.73 (bs, 1H), 1.55-1.5 (m, 1H), 1.49 (s, 9H), 1.26 (t, J = 7.3 Hz, 3H).

20 EXAMPLE 17

Enzymatic resolution of ethyl (1*R*,2*S*)/(1*S*,2*S*) 1-amino-2-vinylcyclopropyl carboxylate:



*Analysis by HPLC using Chiralcel® OD-H column

a) Racemic derivative **17a** (0.29 g, 1.14 mmol) was dissolved in acetone (5 mL) and

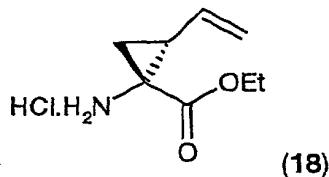
diluted with H₂O (10 mL). The pH was adjusted with 0.2N aqueous NaOH to 7.2 before Alcalase® was added (300 mg). To keep the pH constant during incubation, a NaOH solution was added by a pH stat titrator over 9 days until the theoretical amount of base had been added. Following acid/base extraction as described in

5 Example 13, the unhydrolyzed ester (0.15 g, 100%) and the hydrolyzed material (0.139 g, 95%) were isolated. Analysis of the unhydrolyzed ester by HPLC using a chiral column showed a ratio of 43:1 of the desired compound **17c** that was assigned the (*R,S*) stereochemistry based on chemical correlation as described in Examples 10 and 11.

10 Conditions for HPLC analysis: Chiralcel® OD-H (4.6 mm x 25 cm), isocratic conditions using a mobile phase of 2.5% isopropanol/hexane.

EXAMPLE 18

Resolution of (1*R,2S*)/(1*S,2S*) 1-amino-2-vinylcyclopropyl carboxylate by crystallization with dibenzoyl-D-tartaric acid



15 To a solution of crude racemic (1*S,2S* and 1*R,2S*) ethyl 1-amino-2-vinylcyclopropyl carboxylate [obtained from N-(diphenylmethylene)glycine ethyl ester (25.0 g, 93.5 mol) as described in Example 15] in EtOAc (800 mL) was added dibenzoyl-D-tartaric acid (33.5 g, 93.5 mol). The mixture was heated to reflux, left at RT for 15 min then cooled to 0°C. A white solid was obtained after 30 min. The solid was filtered, washed with EtOAc (100 mL) and air-dried. The solid was suspended in acetone (70 mL), sonicated and filtered (3x). The solid was next recrystallized twice in hot acetone (crop A). The mother liquors were concentrated and the residue was recrystallized three times in hot acetone (crop B). The two crops of the amorphous white solids of dibenzoyl-D-tartaric acid salt were combined (5.53 g) and suspended in a mixture of Et₂O (250 mL) and saturated NaHCO₃ solution (150 mL). The organic layer was washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄) and filtered. The filtrate was diluted with 1 N HCl/Et₂O (100 mL) and concentrated under reduced pressure. The oily residue was evaporated with CCl₄ to afford ethyl 1(*R*)-amino-2(*S*)-vinyl

20 cyclopropanecarboxylate hydrochloride (940 mg, 11% yield) as a white hygroscopic

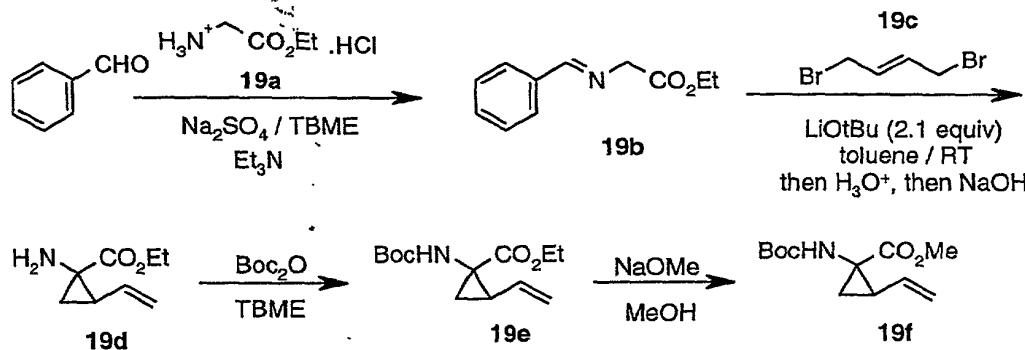
25

30

solid: $[\alpha]_D^{25} +39.5^\circ\text{C}$ (c 1.14 MeOH); $[\alpha]_{365}^{25} +88.5^\circ\text{C}$ (c 1.14 MeOH); $^1\text{H NMR}$ (DMSO-d₆) δ 9.07 (broad s, 2H), 5.64 (ddd, J=17.2, 10.4, 8.7 Hz, 1H), 5.36 (dd, J=17.2, 1.6 Hz, 1H), 5.19 (dd, J=10.4, 1.6 Hz, 1H), 4.24-4.16 (m, 2H), 2.51-2.45 (m, peaks hindered by DMSO, 1H), 1.84 (dd, J=10.0, 6.0 Hz, 1H), 1.64 (dd, J=8.3, 6.0 Hz, 1H), 1.23 (t, J=7.1 Hz, 3H); MS (ESI) m/z 156 (MH⁺); the enantiomeric purity was determined to be 91% ee by HPLC analysis (CHIRALPAK AS[®] column, Hex:i-PrOH) of the Boc derivative.

5 EXAMPLE 19

10 Preparation of (1R,2S)/(1S, 2S)-1-amino-2-vinylcyclopropane carboxylic acid methyl-ester hydrochloride (19f)



Preparation of imine 19b

Glycine ethyl ester hydrochloride 19a (1519.2 g, 10.88 mole, 1.0 equiv) was suspended in tert-butylmethyl ether (8 L). Benzaldehyde (1155 g, 10.88 mole, 1 equiv) and anhydrous sodium sulfate (773 g, 5.44 mole, 0.5 equiv) were added and the mixture cooled to 5 °C in an ice-water bath. Triethylamine (2275 mL, 16.32 mole, 1.5 equiv) was added dropwise over 15 min (use 0.5 L of tert-butylmethyl ether for rinses) and the mixture stirred for 40 h at room temperature. The reaction was then quenched by addition of ice-cold water (5 L) and the organic layer was separated. The aqueous phase was extracted with tert-butylmethyl ether (1 L) and the combined organic phases washed with a mixture of saturated NaHCO_3 (400 mL) and water (1.6 L), and then brine. The solution was dried over MgSO_4 , concentrated under reduced pressure and the residual yellow oil dried to constant weight under vacuum. Imine 19b was obtained as a thick yellow oil that solidifies at -20 °C (2001 g, 96% yield): $^1\text{H NMR}$ (CDCl_3 , 400 MHz) δ 8.30 (s, 1H), 7.79 (m, 2H), 7.48-7.39 (m, 3H), 4.40 (d, J = 1.3 Hz, 2H), 4.24 (q, J = 7 Hz, 2H), 1.31 (t, J = 7 Hz,

3H).

Preparation of racemic N-Boc-(1*R*,2*S*)/(1*S*, 2*S*)-1-amino-2-vinylcyclopropane carboxylic acid ethyl-ester hydrochloride 19e:

Lithium tert-butoxide (4.203 g, 52.5 mmol, 2.1 equiv) was suspended in dry toluene (60 mL). Imine **19b** (5.020 g, 26.3 mmol, 1.05 equiv) and dibromide **19c** (5.348 g, 25 mmol, 1 equiv) were dissolved in dry toluene (30 mL) and this solution added dropwise over 30 min to the stirred solution of LiOtBu at room temperature. After completion, the deep red mixture was stirred for an additional 10 min and quenched by addition of water (50 mL) and tert-butylmethyl ether (TBME, 50 mL). The aqueous phase was separated and extracted a second time with TBME (50 mL). The organic phases were combined, 1 N HCl (60 mL) was added and the mixture stirred at room temperature for 2 h. The organic phase was separated and extracted with water (40 mL). The aqueous phases were then combined, saturated with salt (35 g) and TBME (50 mL) was added. The stirred mixture was then basified to pH 13-14 by careful addition of 10 N NaOH. The organic layer was separated and the aqueous phase extracted with TBME (2×50 mL). The organic extracts containing free amine **19d** were combined and ditertbutyldicarbonate (5.46 g, 25 mmol, 1 equiv) was added. After stirring overnight at room temperature, TLC showed some unreacted free amine. Additional ditertbutyldicarbonate (1.09 g, 5 mmol, 0.2 equiv) was added and the mixture refluxed for 2 h, at which point, TLC analysis indicated complete conversion of **19d** to carbamate **19e**. The solution was cooled to room temperature, dried over MgSO₄ and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by flash chromatography using 10% then 20% EtOAc / hexane as eluent. Purified **19e** was obtained as a clear yellow oil which slowly solidifies under vacuum (4.014 g, 63% yield).

¹H NMR (CDCl₃, 400 MHz) δ 5.77 (ddd, J = 17, 10, 9 Hz, 1H), 5.28 (dd, J = 17, 1.5 Hz, 1H), 5.18 (broad s, 1H), 5.11 (dd J = 10, 1.5 Hz, 1H), 4.24-4.09 (m, 2H), 2.13 (q, J = 8.5 Hz, 1H), 1.79 (broad m, 1H), 1.46 (m, 1H), 1.45 (s, 9H), 1.26 (t, J = 7 Hz, 3H).

Preparation of title compound **19f** via trans-esterification of **19e** :

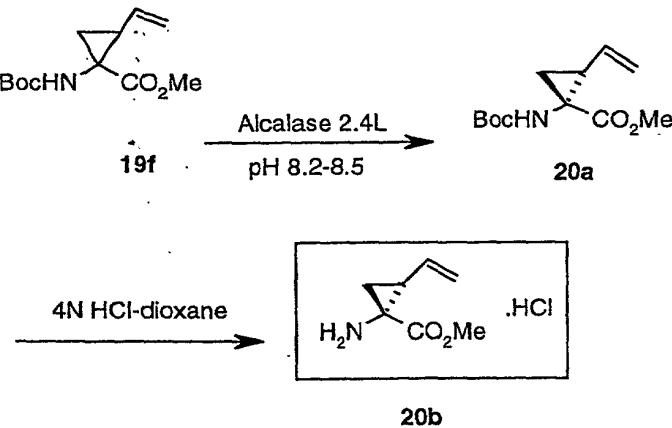
Ethyl ester **19e** (10.807 g, 42.35 mmol) was dissolved in dry methanol (50 mL) and a solution of sodium methoxide in MeOH (25 % w/w, 9.7 mL, 42 mmol, 1 equivalent) was added. The mixture was heated at 50 °C for 2 h, at which point TLC analysis indicated complete trans-esterification (**19e** R_f 0.38, **19f** R_f 0.34 in 20%

EtOAc/hexane). The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature and acidified to pH 4 using 4N HCl in dioxane. Precipitated NaCl was removed by filtration (use tert-butylmethyl ether for washings) and volatiles removed under reduced pressure. Tert-butylmethyl ether (100 mL) was added to the residue and solids removed by 5 filtration. Evaporation of the filtrate under reduced pressure and drying under vacuum gave pure methyl ester **19f** (10.11 g, 99% yield).

¹H NMR (CDCl₃, 400 MHz) δ 5.75 (ddd, J = 17, 10, 9 Hz, 1H), 5.28 (dd, J = 17, 1 Hz, 1H), 5.18 (broad s, 1H), 5.11 (ddd, J = 10, 1.5, 0.5 Hz, 1H), 3.71 (s, 3H), 2.14 (q, J = 9 Hz, 1H), 1.79 (broad m, 1H), 1.50 (broad m, 1H), 1.46 (s, 9H).

10 EXAMPLE 20

Enzymatic resolution of (1*R*,2*S*)-1-amino-2-vinylcyclopropane carboxylic acid methyl-ester hydrochloride



15 Preparation of N-Boc-(1*R*,2*S*)-1-amino-2-vinylcyclopropane carboxylic acid methyl ester **20a**:

Racemic ester **19f** (0.200 g, 0.83 mmol) was dissolved in acetone (3 mL) and water (7 mL) was added. 0.05 M NaOH (1 drop) was added to bring the pH of the solution to ~8 and then Alcalase® 2.4L (Novo Nordisk Biochem, 0.3 g in one mL of water) was added. The mixture was stirred vigorously at room temperature, maintaining 20 the pH of the solution at 8 using an automatic titrator. At beginning of day 4 and 5 of stirring at pH 8, additional enzyme solution was added (2 × 0.3 g). After a total of 5 days, a total of 8.3 mL of 0.05 M NaOH was consumed. The reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc and water and the organic phase separated. After washing with brine, the organic extract was dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated under vacuum. 25 Compound **20a** (0.059 g, 30% yield) was obtained as a clear oil: ¹H NMR identical

to that of compound **19f**. HPLC (Chiralcel ODH, 4.6 × 250 mm, isocratic 1% EtOH in hexane, 0.8 mL/min flow rate): (1*R*,2*S*)-2 R_t 19.3 min (97%); (1*S*,2*R*)-2 R_t 17.0 min (3%).

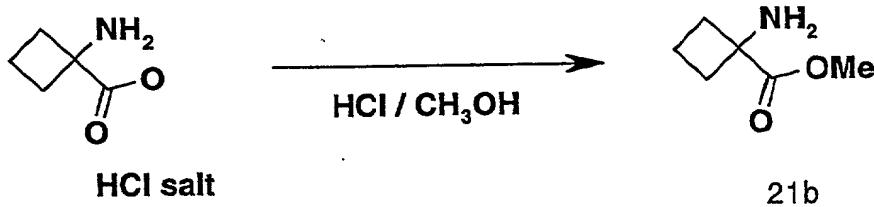
Preparation of (1*R*,2*S*)-1-amino-2-vinylcyclopropane carboxylic acid methyl ester hydrochloride **20b**:

Compound **20a** (39.96 g, 165.7 mmol) was dissolved in dioxane (25 mL) and the solution added dropwise with stirring to 4 N HCl in dioxane (Aldrich, 250 mL). After 45 min, TLC analysis indicated complete deprotection. Volatiles were removed under reduced pressure, and the residue co-evaporated twice with MeOH (2×100 mL). Ether (300 mL) and MeOH (10 mL) were added to the brown, oily residue and the mixture stirred overnight at room temperature resulting in the precipitation of a semi-solid. Additional MeOH (15 mL) was added and stirring continued for 6 h, at which point a yellowish solid was collected by filtration. The product was washed with 5% MeOH in ether (50 mL) and ether (2×50 mL), and dried *in vacuo* to give compound **20b** as a yellowish solid (22.60 g, 76% yield). Filtrates (including washings) were evaporated in vacuum to give additional **20b** as a brown oil (7.82 g, 26% yield). Both fractions were pure enough for use in the synthesis of HCV protease inhibitors: $[\alpha]_D^{25} +38.2^\circ$ (c 1.0, MeOH).

¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 9.15 (broad s, 3H), 5.65 (ddd, J = 17, 10, 9 Hz, 1H),
5.36 (dd, J = 17, 1.5 Hz, 1H), 5.19 (dd, J = 10, 1.5 Hz, 1H), 3.74 (s, 3H), 2.50 (q,
overlap with DMSO signal, J = 9 Hz, 1H), 1.86 (dd, J = 10, 6 Hz, 1H), 1.64 (dd, J =
8, 6 Hz, 1H).

EXAMPLE 21

Synthesis of 1-aminocyclobutyl carboxylic acid methyl ester



25

21a

1,1-aminocyclobutanecarboxylic acid was prepared according to Kavin Douglas ; Ramaligam Kondareddiar ; Woodard Ronald, *Synth. Commun.* (1985), 15 (4) , 267-72 . The amino acid salt (**21a**) (1.00 g. , 6.6 mmoles) was stirred in dry methanol (40 ml) at -20°C and mixture saturated with dry hydrogen chloride to yield (**21b**).

Stirring of this mixture was continued for 4 h. The hot solution was filtered and filtrate concentrated (Rotavap, 30°C) to leave a residue which upon trituration in ethyl ether afforded a white powder (0.907 g., 83%) after filtration and drying. ¹H NMR (400MHz, D₂) δ CH₃O (3H, s, 3.97 ppm); CH₂ (2H, m, 2.70-2.77 ppm); CH₂ (2H, m, 2.45-2.53 ppm) and CH₂ (2H, m, 2.14-2.29 ppm).

TRIPEPTIDES

EXAMPLE 22

General procedure for coupling reactions done on solid support.

The synthesis was done on a parallel synthesizer model ACT396 from Advanced ChemTech® with the 96 well block. Typically, 24 peptides were synthesized in parallel using standard solid-phase techniques. The starting (Fmoc-amino)cyclopropane (optionally substituted) carboxylic acid-Wang resin were prepared by the DCC/DMAP coupling method (Atherton, E; Scheppard, R.C. *Solid Phase Peptide Synthesis, a Practical Approach*; IRL Press: Oxford (1989); pp 131-148).

Each well was loaded with 100 mg of the starting resin (approximately 0.05 mmol). The resins were washed successively with 1.5 mL portions of NMP (1 X) and DMF (3 X). The Fmoc protecting group was removed by treatment with 1.5 mL of a 25% v/v solution of piperidine in DMF for 20 minutes. The resins were washed with 1.5 mL portions of DMF (4 X), MeOH (3 X) and DMF (3 X). The coupling was done in DMF (350 μL), using 400 μL (0.2 mmol) of a 0.5M solution of Fmoc-amino acid/HOBt hydrate in DMF, 400 μL (0.4 mmol) of a 1M solution of DIPEA in DMF and 400 μL (0.2 mmol) of a 0.5M solution of TBTU in DMF. After shaking for 1 hour, the wells were drained, the resins were washed with 1.5 mL of DMF and the coupling was repeated once more under the same conditions. The resins were then washed as described above and the cycle was repeated with the next amino acid. The capping groups were introduced in two ways:

1. In the form of a carboxylic acid using the protocol described above (for example acetic acid) or,
2. As an acylating agent such as an anhydride or an acid chloride. The following example illustrates the capping with succinic anhydride: After the Fmoc deprotection and subsequent washing protocol, DMF was added (350 μL), followed by 400 μL each of a DMF solution of succinic anhydride (0.5 M, 0.2 mmol) and

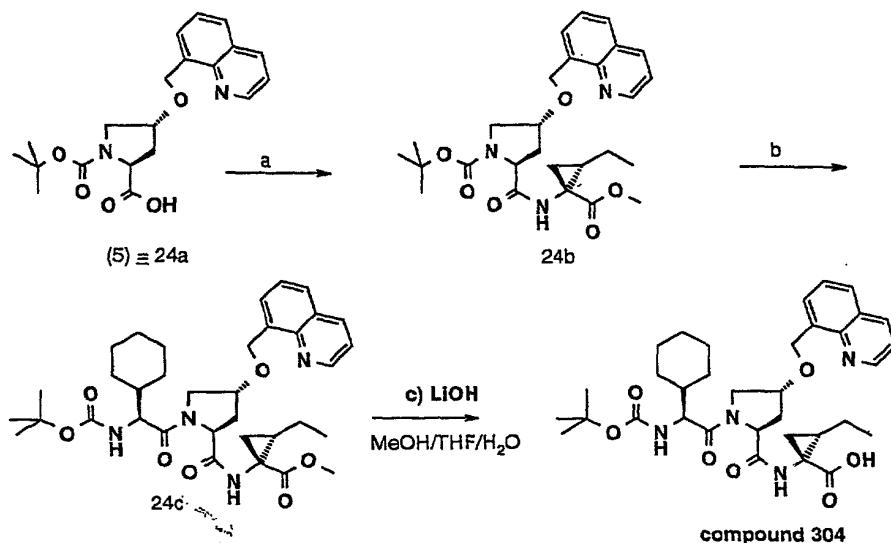
DIPEA (1.0 M, 0.4 mmol). The resins were stirred for 2 h and a recoupling step was performed. At the end of the synthesis the resin was washed with 1.5 mL portions of DCM (3x), MeOH (3x), DCM (3x), and were dried under vacuum for 2 h. The cleavage from the resin and concomitant side chain deprotection was effected by
5 the addition of 1.5 mL of a mixture of TFA, H₂O, DTT and TIS (92.5: 2.5: 2.5: 2.5). After shaking for 2.5 h, the resin was filtered and washed with 1.5 mL of DCM. The filtrates were combined and concentrated by vacuum centrifugation. Each compound was purified by preparative reversed phase HPLC using a C18 column (22 mm by 500 mm). The product-containing fractions were identified by MALDI-
10 TOF mass spectrometry, combined and lyophilized.

EXAMPLE 23

General procedure for coupling reactions done in solution {See also R. Knorr et al., Tetrahedron Letters, (1989), 30, 1927.}

The reactants, i.e. a free amine (1 eq.) (or its hydrochloride salt) and the free carboxylic acid (1 eq.) were dissolved in CH₂Cl₂, CH₃CN or DMF. Under a nitrogen atmosphere, four equivalents of *N*-methylmorpholine and 1.05 equivalents of the coupling agent were added to the stirred solution. After 20 min, one equivalent of the second reactant, i.e. a free carboxylic acid was added. (Practical and efficient coupling reagents for this purpose are (benzotriazol-1-yloxy)tris-
15 (dimethylamino)phosphonium hexafluorophosphate (HOBT) or preferably 2-(1H-benzotriazol-1-yl)-*N,N,N',N'*-tetramethyluronium tetrafluoroborate (TBTU) or O-(7-azabenzotriazol-1-yl)-*N,N,N',N'*-tetramethyluronium tetrafluoroborate (HATU). The reaction was monitored by TLC. After completion of the reaction, the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in EtOAc. The
20 solution was washed successively with 10% aqueous citric acid, saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ and brine. The organic phase was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. When the residue was purified, it was done
25 by flash chromatography as defined above.

EXAMPLE 24**30 Synthesis of compound 304**SEARCHED
INDEXED
SERIALIZED
FILED



a) The (R,R) isomer of Boc-Et-Acca-OMe **13c** (0.12 g, 0.49 mmol) obtained from enzymatic resolution (Example 13) was treated with 4N HCl/dioxane (45 min) before being concentrated *in vacuo* to give a white solid. To this HCl salt (ca. 0.49 mmol) was added TBTU (0.17 g, 0.54 mmol), the Boc-4(*R*)-(8-quinoline-methoxy) proline **5** (from Example 5) (0.18 g, 0.49 mmol) and DIPEA (0.3 mL, 1.7 mmol) in MeCN (10 mL). The mixture was stirred at RT for 3.5 h before being concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting material was dissolved in EtOAc and washed sequentially with saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ and brine. Dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated to give **24b** a white solid (0.122 g, 50%).

b) **24b** (0.12 g, 0.25 mmol) was treated at RT with 4N HCl/dioxane (30 min) before being concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting hydrochloride salt (ca. 0.25 mmol) was treated with Boc-Chg-OH•H₂O (75 mg, 0.27 mmol), TBTU (87 mg, 0.27 mmol) in MeCN (10 mL) and finally at 0°C with DIPEA (0.15 mL, 0.87 mmol). The residue was diluted with EtOAc, sequentially washed with saturated aqueous NaHCO₃, and brine, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated to give **24c** as an off white solid (0.2 g). This material (0.14 g) was dissolved in DMSO and purified by preparative HPLC to give **24c** as a white solid after lyophilization (35 mg, 33%). HPLC (98%); MS (FAB) m/z: 637.3 (MH⁺); HRMS calcd for C₃₅H₄₈N₄O₇ (MH⁺) 637.36011; found 637.36250; ¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) shows a rotamer population, δ 8.91 (2 x d, J = 4.1 and 4.1 Hz, 1H), 8.40-8.36 (m, 2H), 7.90 (d, J = 7.6 Hz, 1H), 7.77 (d, J = 7.0 Hz, 1H), 7.6-7.54 (m, 2H), 6.80 (d, J = 8.6 Hz, 1H), 5.18 and 5.16 (2 x s, 2H), 4.40 (bs, 1H), 4.31 (t, J = 8.3 Hz, 1H), 4.12 (d, J = 11.44 Hz, 1H), 4.03 (t, J = 7.9 Hz, 1H), 3.78-3.72 (m, 1H), 3.56 (s, 3H), 2.35-2.27 (m, 1H), 2.06-1.97 (m, 1H), 1.71-1.55 (m,

10H), 1.53-1.38 (m, 2H), 1.26 (s, 9H), 1.18-1.06 (m, 2H), 1.02-0.93 (m, 2H), 0.89 (t, J = 7.3 Hz, 3H).

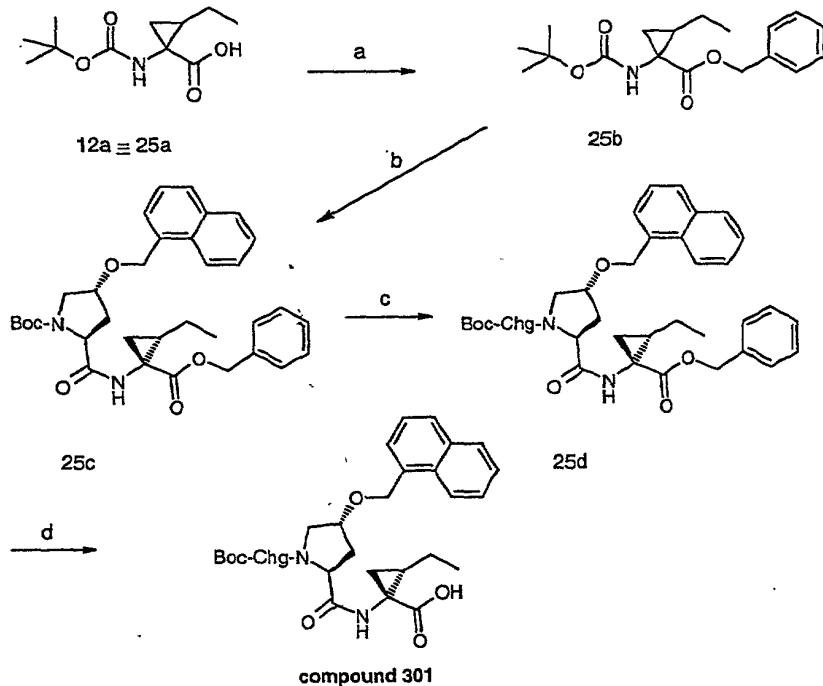
compound 304:

c) To **24c** (30 mg, ca. 0.047 mmol) was added MeOH (1 mL), THF (1 mL), and lithium hydroxide monohydrate (12 mg, 0.29 mmol) in H₂O (1 mL). The clear solution was stirred rapidly for 48 h before being concentrated *in vacuo*. The crude peptide was dissolved in DMSO and purified by preparative HPLC to give compound **304** as a white solid after lyophilization (21 mg, 72%). HPLC (99%); MS (FAB) m/z: (MH⁺) 623.3; HRMS calcd for C₃₄H₄₆N₄O₇ (MH⁺) 623.34448, found: 623.34630,

10 ¹HNMR (DMSO-d₆) shows a rotamer population of 1:1, δ 8.90 (2 x d, J = 4.1 Hz, 1H), 8.37 (d, J = 8.3 Hz, 1H), 8.26 (s, 1H), 7.89 (d, J = 8.3 Hz, 1H), 7.77 (d, J = 6.7 Hz, 1H), 7.6-7.53 (m, 2H), 6.88 and 6.79 (2 x d, J = 8.6 and 7.9 Hz, 1H), 5.17 and 5.16 (2 x s, 2H), 4.43-4.35 (bs, 1H), 4.29 (t, J = 8.3 Hz, 1H), 3.82-3.71 (m, 1H), 2.35-2.27 (m, 1H), 2.06-1.97 (m, 1H), 1.72-1.53 (m, 10H), 1.52-1.44 (m, 2H), 1.37 and 15 1.29 (2 x s, 9H), 1.18-1.05 (m, 3H), 1.0-0.94 (m, 1H), 0.91 (t, J = 7.3 Hz, 3H).

EXAMPLE 25

Synthesis of compound 301



a) Compound **25a** (=12a) (282 mg, 1.23 mmol) was suspended in anhydrous

CH_3CN (6 mL). DBU (221 μL , 1.48 mmol) and benzylbromide (161 μL , 1.35 mmol) were added successively and the reaction mixture was stirred overnight at RT. The mixture was concentrated, the resulting oil was diluted with EtOAc and 10% aq. citric acid and successively washed with 10% citric acid (2x), saturated aq.

5 NaHCO_3 (2x), water (2x) and brine (1x). The EtOAc layer was dried (MgSO_4), filtered and evaporated to dryness. The crude colorless oil was purified by flash chromatography (eluent – hexane : EtOAc ; 95:5 to 90:10) to provide the benzylation product **25b** as a colorless oil (368mg ; 93%).

MS (FAB) 318.2 MH^- 320.2 MH^+ 342.2 ($\text{M}+\text{Na}$)⁺

10 ^1H NMR (CDCl_3) δ 7.37-7.28 (m, 5H), 5.22-5.10 (m, 1H), 5.19 (d, $J= 12$ Hz, 1H), 5.16 (d, $J= 12$ Hz, 1H), 1.60-1.40 (m, 4H), 1.39 (s, 9H), 1.31-1.22 (m, 1H), 0.91 (t, $J= 7.5, 14.5$ Hz, 3H).

b) Compound **25b** (368 mg, 1.15 mmol) was treated with 4N HCl/dioxane (6 mL) as described previously. The crude hydrochloride salt was coupled to compound **4** (from Example 4) (470.8 mg, 1.27 mmol) with NMM (507 μL , 4.61 mmol) and HATU (instead of TBTU, 525.6 mg, 1.38 mmol) in CH_2Cl_2 (6 mL) as described in Example 22 to yield the crude racemic dipeptide as an orange oil. The crude material was purified by flash chromatography (eluent - hexane : Et_2O ; 50:50) to provide the pure dipeptide **25c** (the less polar eluting spot) as a white foam (223mg ; 68 % of the theoretical yield).

MS 571.4 MH^- 573.3 MH^+ 595.3 ($\text{M}+\text{Na}$)⁺

15 ^1H NMR (CDCl_3), ca.1:1 mixture of rotamers, δ 8.03 (b d, $J= 8$ Hz, 1H), 7.86 (b d, $J= 7.5$ Hz, 1H), 7.82 (b d, $J= 6.5$ Hz, 1H), 7.61 (b s, 0.5H), 7.57-7.40(m, 4H), 7.31-7.21 (m, 5H), 6.48 (b s, 0.5H), 5.22-5.11 (m, 1H), 5.08-4.81 (m, 3H), 4.41-3.74 (m, 3H), 3.49-3.18 (m, 1H), 2.76-1.90 (m, 2H), 1.69-1.48 (m, 3H), 1.40 (s, 9H), 1.40-1.23 (m, 2H), 0.92 (t, $J= 7.5, 15$ Hz, 3H).

25 c) The dipeptide **25c** (170.1 mg, 0.297 mmol) was treated with 4N HCl/dioxane (2mL) as described previously. The crude hydrochloride salt was coupled to Boc-Chg-OH (84.1 mg, 0.327 mmol) with NMM (130.7 μL , 1.19 mmol) and HATU (instead of TBTU, 135.5mg; 0.356 mmol) in CH_2Cl_2 (2mL) for 2.75 h at RT then worked up as described previously to provide the crude tripeptide **25d** as an ivory foam (ca. 211.4 mg ; 100%).

MS (FAB) 712.5 MH^+

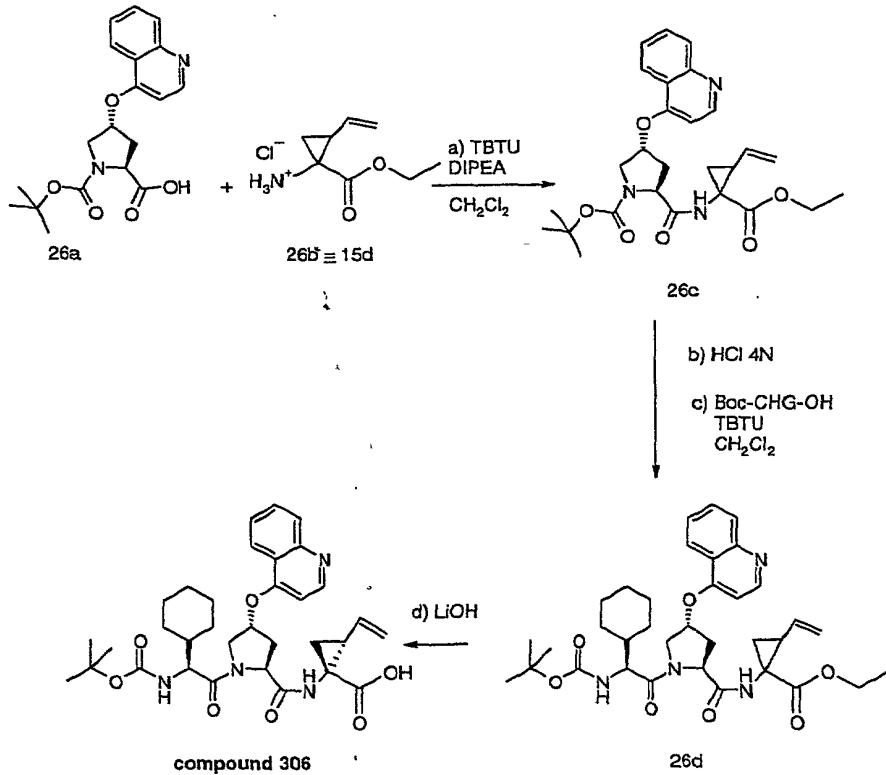
compound 301:

d) The crude tripeptide **25d** (ca.15.4 mg , 0.022 mmol) was dissolved in absolute ethanol (2 mL) and an estimated amount (tip of spatula) of both 10% Pd/C catalyst and ammonium acetate were added. The mixture was hydrogenated overnight under a hydrogen filled balloon at RT and atmospheric pressure. The reaction mixture was filtered through a 0.45 μm Millex® filter, evaporated to dryness then diluted with EtOAc and 10% aqueous citric acid, and washed again with 10% aqueous citric acid (1x), water (2x) and brine (1x). The organic layer was dried (MgSO_4), filtered, evaporated to dryness and lyophilized to provide the tripeptide **301** as a white amorphous solid (11.0 mg ; 82%).

5 MS (FAB) 622.5 MH^+ 644.5 ($\text{M}+\text{Na}^+$)
¹H NMR (DMSO), ca.1:4 mixture of rotamers, δ 8.54 & 8.27 (s, 1H), 8.06-7.99 (m, 1H), 7.96-7.91 (m, 1H), 7.87 (d, $J=8\text{Hz}$, 1H), 7.57-7.42 (m, 4H), 6.81 (d, $J=8\text{Hz}$, 1H), 4.99 (d, $J=12\text{Hz}$, 1H), 4.88 (d, $J=12\text{Hz}$, 1H), 4.46-4.19 (m, 2H), 4.17-4.02 (m, 2H), 3.88-3.67 (m, 1H), 2.28-2.19 (m, 1H), 2.05-1.93 (m, 1H), 1.73-1.43 (m, 8H), 15 1.32-1.07 (m, 6H), 1.28 (s, 9H), 1.03-0.85 (m, 2H), 0.91 (t, $J=7.5, 15\text{Hz}$, 3H)

EXAMPLE 26

Synthesis of compound **306**



a) The acid **26a** (180 mg, 0.500 mmol) and the amine **15d** (96 mg, 0.500 mmole) were coupled using TBTU (192 mg, 0.600 mmol) and DIPEA (226 mg, 1.75 mmol) in CH₂Cl₂ (10 mL) for 20 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated, taken up in ethyl acetate, washed twice with sat. NaHCO₃ and once with brine. The organic layer was dried on MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated to give **26c** as a brown oil, used without purification in the next step.

b, c) The crude compound **26c** (ca. 0.500 mmol) was stirred for 30 min in HCl 4N/dioxane (4 mL) and concentrated to dryness. The solid was taken up in CH₂Cl₂ (10 mL) and DIPEA (226 mg, 1.75 mmol) was added followed by Boc-Chg-OH monohydrate (138 mg, 0.500 mmol) and TBTU (192 mg, 0.600 mmol). The solution was stirred at RT for 5 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated, taken up in ethyl acetate, washed twice with sat. NaHCO₃ and once with brine. The organic layer was dried on MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated to give a brown oil, purified by flash chromatography to give **26d** as a yellow oil, 204 mg, 64% over two couplings.

¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 8.77-8.74 (m, 1 H), 8.14 (d, J = 8 Hz, 1 H), 8.02 (d, J = 9 Hz, 1 H), 7.69 (dd, J = 9, 7 Hz, 1 H), 7.52 (d, J = 5 Hz, 1 H), 7.47 (dd, J = 8, 7 Hz, 1 H), 6.78 (d, J = 5 Hz, 1 H), 5.80-5.70 (m, 1 H), 5.35-5.27 (m, 2 H), 5.14-5.07 (m, 2 H), 4.89-4.83 (m, 1 H), 4.39-4.32 (m, 1 H), 4.30-4.24 (m, 1 H), 4.20-4.07 (m, 2 H), 4.00-3.92 (m, 1 H), 3.04-2.92 (m, 1 H), 2.39-2.29 (m, 1 H), 2.16-2.04 (m, 1 H), 1.91-1.83 (m, 1 H), 1.82-1.62 (m, 7 H), 1.45-1.35 (m, 9 H), 1.27-1.07 (m, 8 H).

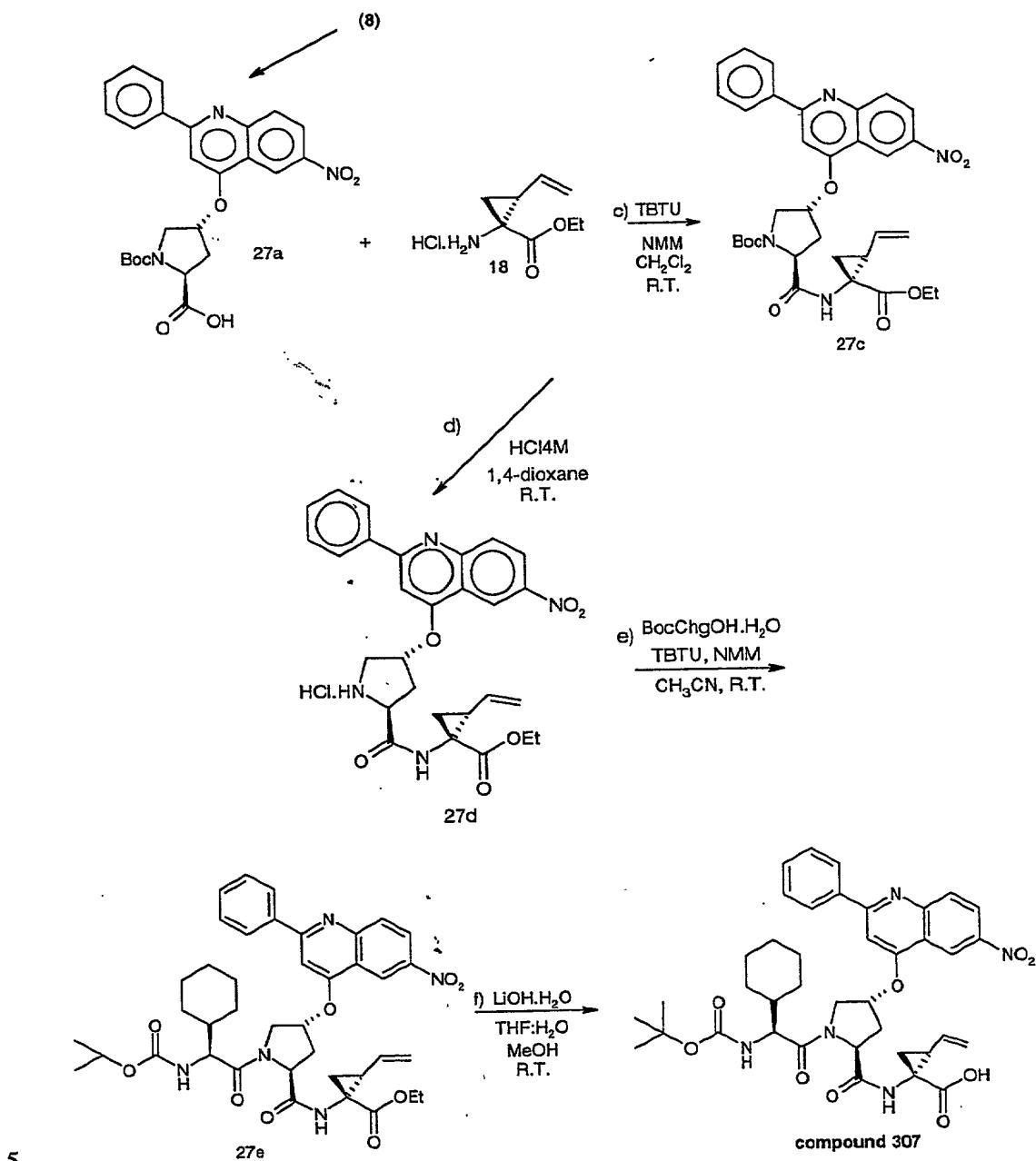
d) **26d** (136 mg, 0.214 mmole) was dissolved in THF (4 mL) and MeOH (2 mL). An aqueous solution (2 mL) of LiOH hydrate (72 mg, 1.72 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred at RT for 20 h. The solution was concentrated and purified by preparative HPLC to give **compound 306** (the less polar isomer) as a white solid (25 mg).

compound 306: MS(FAB) 607.4 (MH⁺)

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 9.16 (d, J = 6 Hz, 1 H), 8.55 (s, 1 H), 8.35 (d, J = 8 Hz, 1 H), 8.12 (d, J = 9 Hz, 1 H), 8.05 (dd, J = 8, 7 Hz, 1 H), 7.76 (dd, J = 8, 7 Hz, 1 H), 7.59 (d, J = 6 Hz, 1 H), 7.02 (d, J = 8 Hz, 1 H), 5.75-5.66 (m, 2 H), 5.19 (d, J = 18 Hz, 1 H), 5.07 (d, J = 10 Hz, 1 H), 4.55 (d, J = 12 Hz, 1 H), 4.43 (dd, J = 10, 8 Hz, 1 H), 4.03 (d, J = 10 Hz, 1 H), 3.87-3.83 (m, 1 H), 2.66-2.59 (m, 1 H), 2.36-2.30 (m, 1 H), 1.98 (dd, J = 18, 9 Hz, 1 H), 1.75-1.56 (m, 8 H), 1.38-1.35 (m, 1 H), 1.25-1.22 (m, 1 H), 1.09 (s, 9 H), 1.12-0.95 (m, 3 H).

EXAMPLE 27

Synthesis of compound 307



5

c) A solution of the acid (8) from Example 8 (505 mg, 105 mmol) in 5 mL of dichloromethane was treated with TBTU (376 mg, 1.17 mmol). The HCl salt of the (R,S) vinyl AccaOEt (18) (from Example 18) (279 mg, 1.46 mmol), in 7 mL of dichloromethane containing (0.60 mL, 5.46 mmol) of N-methyl morpholine, was added to the previous solution of the activated ester. The resulting solution was

10

stirred at RT overnight. The solvent was evaporated *in vacuo*. The residue diluted with ethyl acetate, was washed twice with a saturated solution of sodium bicarbonate and once with brine. The organic layer was dried (MgSO_4) filtered and evaporated *in vacuo*. The residue was chromatographed over silica gel (60:40 v/v, hexanes-ethyl acetate) to afford 173 mg (27%) of the dipeptide **27c**.

d, e) A solution of the dipeptide **27c** (70 mg, 0.114 mmol) in 3 mL of hydrogen chloride 4.0 M solution in 1,4-dioxane was stirred at RT for 1h (a precipitated came out from the reaction after 10 min). The solvent was removed *in vacuo*. The amine hydrochloride salt **27d** (0.114 mmol), diluted in 1.5 mL of acetonitrile, was neutralized by addition of 65 μL (0.591 mmol) of N-methyl morpholine. A solution of the Boc ChgOH $\bullet\text{H}_2\text{O}$ (39 mg, 0.142 mmol) in 1.5 mL of acetonitrile was treated with TBTU (46 mg, 0.143 mmol) and then added to the previous solution of the amine. The resulting solution was stirred at RT (for 2 days). The solvent was removed *in vacuo*. The residue, diluted with ethyl acetate, was washed twice with a saturated solution of sodium bicarbonate and once with brine. The organic layer was dried (MgSO_4), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo*. 86 mg (100%) of tripeptide **27e** was obtained. This crude compound was used in the next reaction without further purification.

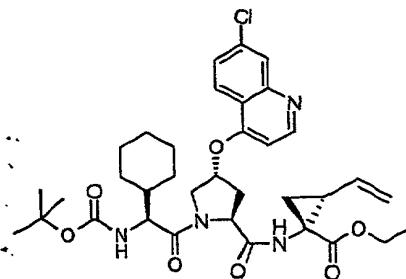
f) To a solution of tripeptide **27e** (86 mg, 0.114 mmol) in 5 mL of a mixture THF: H_2O (2.5:1) was added lithium hydroxide monohydrate (22 mg, 0.524 mmol). An additional 0.25 mL of MeOH was added in order to get an homogeneous solution. The resulting solution was stirred at RT overnight before the solvent was evaporated *in vacuo*. The residue was partitioned between water and EtOAc. The aqueous layer was acidified with 1M HCl and then extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The desired compound has been found in the ethyl acetate coming from the first basic extraction. This organic layer was dried (MgSO_4), filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* to afford 69 mg of the crude acid, which was purified by preparatory HPLC. The compound was dissolved in MeOH (4 mL) and injected onto an equilibrated Whatman Partisil 10-ODS-3 (2.2 x 50cm) C18 reverse phase column. ($\lambda = 230\text{nm}$, solvent A = 0.06% TFA/ H_2O , solvent B=0.06% TFA/ CH_3CN). Purification program: 20% to 70% of solvent B in 60 min. Fractions were analyzed by analytical HPLC. Appropriate fractions were collected and lyophilized to provide 50 mg (60%) of the desired tripeptide **307** as a white amorphous solid.

compound 307: ^1H NMR (DMSO- d_6) rotamers ~ 2:8 δ 8.86 (d, $J = 2.5$ Hz, 1H), 8.85

(s, 0.2H), 8.64 (s, 0.8H), 8.49 (dd, $J = 9.5, 3$ Hz, 0.2H), 8.45 (dd, $J = 9.2$ Hz, 0.8H), 8.39-8.33 (m, 2H), 8.20 (d, $J = 9.5$ Hz, 0.2H), 8.18 (d, $J = 9.5$ Hz, 0.8H), 7.81 (s, 0.2H), 7.78 (s, 0.8H), 7.64-7.56 (m, 3H), 6.87 (d, $J = 8$ Hz, 0.8H), 6.36 (d, $J = 9$ Hz, 0.2H), 5.82-5.67 (m, 2H), 5.27-5.17 (m, 1H), 5.09-5.03 (m, 1H), 4.73 (t, $J = 8$ Hz, 0.2H), 4.55 (dd, $J = 10, 7.5$ Hz, 0.8H), 4.49-4.40 (m, 1H), 4.00-3.95 (m, 1H), 3.83-3.76 (m, 1H), 2.87-2.80 (m, 0.2H), 2.69-2.62 (m, 0.8H), 2.39-2.26 (m, 1H), 2.08-2.00 (m, 1H), 1.75-1.41 (m, 7H), 1.37 (s, 1.8H), 1.32-1.27 (m, 1H), 1.17-0.82 (m, 5H), 0.94 (s, 7.2H).

EXAMPLE 28

10 Synthesis of compound 311



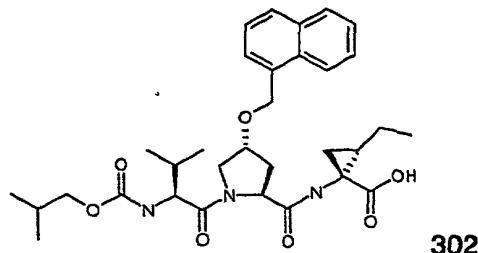
compound 310

Compound 311 was prepared using the process described in Example 24 but using the appropriate building blocks.

Compound 310 ^1H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 8.98 (d, $J = 6$ Hz, 1 H), 8.52 (s, 1 H), 8.24 (d, 15 $J = 9$ Hz, 1 H), 8.08 (d, $J = 2$ Hz, 1 H), 7.63 (d, $J = 9$ Hz, 1 H), 7.37 (d, $J = 6$ Hz, 1 H), 6.98 (d, $J = 8$ Hz, 1 H), 5.75-5.66 (m, 1 H), 5.57 (br s, 1 H), 5.24-5.19 (m, 1 H), 5.08-5.01 (m, 1 H), 4.57-4.40 (m, 2 H), 4.00-3.96 (m, 1 H), 3.82 (dd, $J = 9, 8$ Hz, 1 H), 2.59-2.54 (m, 1 H), 2.32-2.26 (m, 1 H), 1.99 (dd, $J = 17, 9$ Hz, 1 H), 1.74-1.55 (m, 8 H), 1.37 (s, 1 H), 1.26-1.22 (m, 1 H), 1.14-1.08 (m, 9 H), 1.02-0.91 (m, 3 H).

20 EXAMPLE 29

Synthesis of compound 302



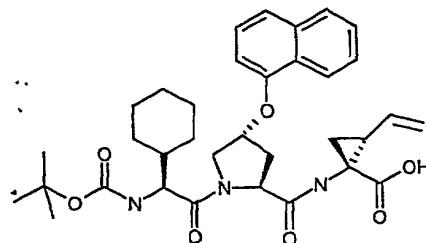
302

Compound 302 was prepared using the process described in Example 27 but using the appropriate building blocks.

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 8.34 (s, 1 H), 8.04-8.01 (m, 1 H), 7.94-7.92 (m, 1 H), 7.87 (d, J = 8 Hz, 1 H), 7.54-7.50 (m, 3 H), 7.45 (dd, J = 17, 8 Hz, 1 H), 7.22 (d, J = 8 Hz, 1 H), 4.94 (dd, J = 55, 12 Hz, 2 H), 4.34 (s, 1 H), 4.27 (dd, J = 8, 8 Hz, 1 H), 4.16 (d, J = 11 Hz, 1 H), 4.07 (dd, J = 8, 8 Hz, 1 H), 3.72-3.65 (m, 2 H), 3.59-3.54 (m, 1 H), 2.24-2.18 (m, 1 H), 2.02-1.95 (m, 2 H), 1.75-1.70 (m, 1 H), 1.53-1.44 (m, 2 H), 1.32-1.27 (m, 1 H), 1.21-1.17 (m, 1 H), 0.96-0.85 (m, 10 H), 0.80-0.77 (m, 5 H), 0.62-0.57 (m, 1 H).

10 EXAMPLE 30

Synthesis of compound 308



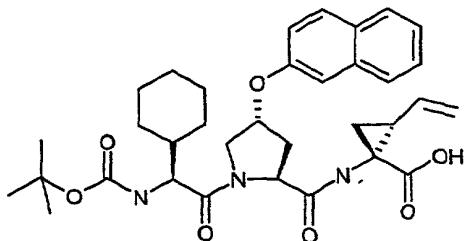
308

Compound 308 was prepared using the process described in Example 27 but using the appropriate building blocks.

¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) rotamers ≈ 2:8 δ 8.77 (s, 0.2H), 8.45 (s, 0.8H), 8.13 (d, J = 8.5 Hz, 0.8H), 8.03 (d, J = 8.5 Hz, 0.2H), 7.89-7.83 (m, 1H), 7.55-7.37 (m, 4H), 7.05-6.59 (m, 1H), 6.95 (d, J = 8 Hz, 0.8H), 6.26 (d, J = 8.5 Hz, 0.2H), 5.81-5.64 (m, 1H), 5.33-5.28 (m, 1H), 5.26-5.15 (m, 1H), 5.08-5.02 (m, 1H), 4.60 (t, J = 7.5 Hz, 0.2H), 4.38-4.27 (m, 1.8H), 4.09-3.91 (m, 1.8H), 3.74 (dd, J = 12.5, 4 Hz, 0.2H), 2.69-2.60 (m, 0.2H), 2.50-2.40 (m, 1H), 2.36-2.28 (m, 0.2H), 2.23-2.14 (m, 0.8H), 2.05-1.97 (m, 0.8H), 1.76-1.44 (m, 7H), 1.37 (s, 1.8H), 1.29 (s, 7.2H), 1.28-1.20 (m, 1H), 1.16-0.88 (m, 5H).

EXAMPLE 31

25 Synthesis of compound 309



309

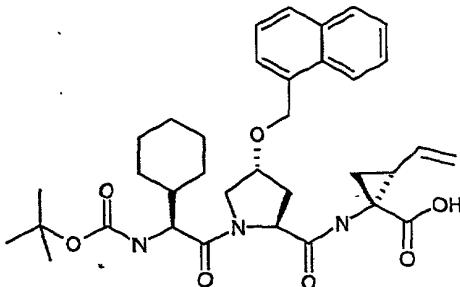
Compound 309 was prepared using the process described in Example 27 but using the appropriate building blocks.

5 ^1H NMR (DMSO-d₆) rotamers \cong 2:8 δ 8.75 (s, 0.2H), 8.50 (s, 0.8H), 7.89-7.78 (m, 3H), 7.50-7.44 (m, 1H), 7.42-7.32 (m, 2H), 7.17-7.09 (m, 0.8H) 7.08-7.03 (m, 0.2H), 6.79 (d, J = 8.5 Hz, 0.8H), 6.33 (d, J = 9 Hz, 0.2H), 5.81-5.65 (m, 1H), 5.30-5.16 (m, 2H), 5.10-5.02 (m, 1H), 4.56 (t, J = 7.5 Hz, 0.2H), 4.33 (t, J = 8 Hz, 0.8H), 4.10-3.90 (m, 2.8H), 3.74-3.68 (m, 0.2H), 2.45-2.37 (m, 1H), 2.34-2.17 (m, 1H), 2.05-1.97 (m, 1H), 1.76-1.48 (m, 7H), 1.37 (s, 1.8H), 1.23 (s, 7.2H), 1.21-0.88 (m, 6H).

10

EXAMPLE 32

Synthesis of compound 305



305

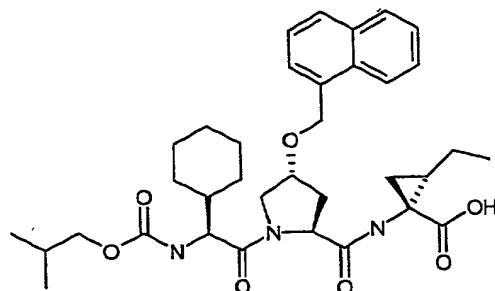
15 **Compound 305** was prepared using the process described in Example 27 but using the appropriate building blocks.

1 ^1H NMR (DMSO-d₆) rotamers (1:9) δ 8.68 (s, 0.1H), 8.43 (s, 0.9H), 8.04-8.00 (m, 1H), 7.95-7.91 (m, 1H), 7.87 (d, J = 8.5 Hz, 1H), 7.57-7.49 (m, 3H), 7.47-7.42 (m, 1H), 6.82 (d, J = 8.5 Hz, 0.9H), 6.21 (d, J = 8.5 Hz, 0.1H), 5.80-5.64 (m, 1H), 5.21 (dd, J = 17, 2 Hz, 0.1H), 5.18 (dd, J = 17, 2 Hz, 0.9H), 5.06 (dd, J = 10.5, 2 Hz, 1H), 5.02-4.85 (m, 2H), 4.43 (t, J = 7.5 Hz, 0.1H), 4.34 (br s, 1H), 4.23 (t, J = 8.5 Hz, 0.9H), 4.16-4.05 (m, 1.8H), 3.89-3.82 (m, 0.2H), 3.74 (dd, J = 11, 3.5 Hz, 0.9H), 3.53 (dd, J = 12.5, 4 Hz, 0.1H), 2.30-2.21 (m, 1H), 2.02-1.94 (m, 2H), 1.74-1.38 (m,

7H), 1.36 (s, 0.9H), 1.28 (s, 8.1H), 1.25-0.87 (m, 6H).

EXAMPLE 33

Synthesis of compound 303



303

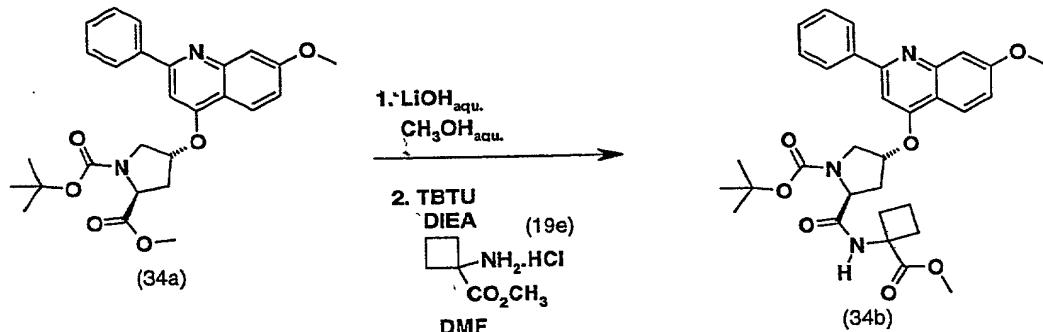
5

Compound 303 was prepared using the process described in Example 27 but using the appropriate building blocks.

10 ¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 8.29 (s, 1 H), 8.04-8.01 (m, 1 H), 7.94-7.92 (m, 1 H), 7.87 (d, J = 8 Hz, 1 H), 7.56-7.52 (m, 3 H), 7.46 (dd, J = 8, 7 Hz, 1 H), 7.19 (d, J = 9 Hz, 1 H), 5.01 (d, J = 12 Hz, 1 H), 4.86 (d, J = 12 Hz, 1 H), 4.34 (br. s, 1 H), 4.24 (t, J = 8 Hz, 1 H), 4.18-4.09 (m, 2 H), 3.74-3.53 (m, 3 H), 2.24-2.18 (m, 1 H), 2.04-1.95 (m, 1 H), 1.74-1.45 (m, 10 H), 1.31-1.13 (m, 4 H), 0.96-0.86 (m, 7 H), 0.79-0.76 (m, 5 H).

EXAMPLE 34

Synthesis of compound 403



15

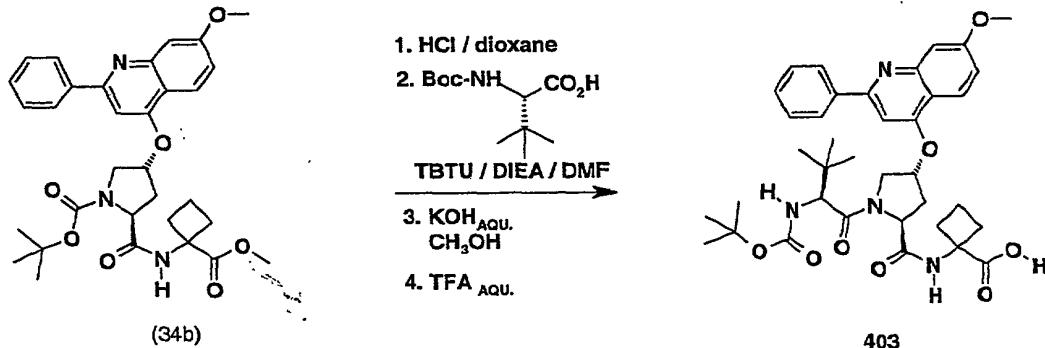
a) Coupling of P2 with P1

The methyl ester derivative of 7 (34a) (170 mg, 0.355 mmole) was stirred in 50% THF-methanol (4 ml) and aqueous LiOH (1M, 1 ml) at RT for 1h. The solution was concentrated (Rotavap, 30°C) and residue acidified to pH 6 and solution lyophilized.

20 The resulting powder was stirred in dry DMF (3 ml) in the presence of DIEA (0.4 ml) followed by the successive addition of 1,1-aminocyclobutylcarboxylic acid methyl

ester hydrochloride (**34b**) (140 mg, 0.845 mmole) and TBTU (134 mg, 0.417 mmole). After stirring for 18 h at RT , the mixture was purified by flash chromatography on silica gel (230-400 Mesh) using 1:2 ethyl acetate-hexane to afford an orange oil (98 mg , 90% purity by HPLC).

5 b) Coupling of P1-P2 with P3



The dipeptide **34b** (97 mg, 90%, 0.155 mmole) was stirred in 4N HCl-dioxane (5 ml) during 1h at RT . The solution was then concentrated to dryness (Rotavap, high vacuum) to afford a beige solid. This material was stirred in dry DMF (2 ml) at RT in 10 the presence of DIEA (0.4 ml) followed by addition of L-Boc-Tbg (80 mg, 0.35 mmole) and TBTU (112 mg, 0.35 mmole) . After stirring 2 days at RT, the solution was poured in ethyl acetate to generate the free base using 5% aqueous potassium carbonate. The organic phase was worked up to give a yellow oily residue. The material was purified by flash chromatography on silica gel column (230-400 Mesh) 15 using 1:2 & 3: 1 v/v ethyl acetate: hexane to afford 40 mg of an oil, homogeneous by HPLC.

The methyl ester (40 mg) was finally saponified in 1N potassium hydroxide (2 ml) in methanol (4 ml) by stirring at RT during 3h. The mixture was concentrated (Rotavap, 30°C) and acidified to pH 4 with 2N hydrochloric acid. This mixture was 20 purified by preparative HPLC on C18 column using a gradient of 0-50% aqueous acetonitrile (0.1% TFA) at 220 nm. The fractions were pooled, concentrated to half volume and lyophilized to afford **403** as a white fluffy solid (10 mg).

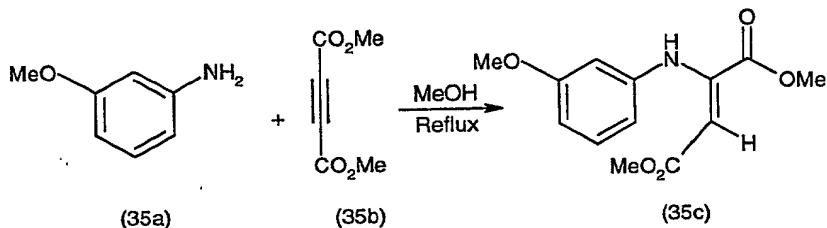
¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ Mixture of rotamers : NH+ (1H, s, 8.6 ppm), CH (3H, m, 8.2 ppm), Ph (5H, broad s, 7.66 & 7.53 ppm), CH (1H, broad, 7.22 ppm), NH (1H, d, J= 7.6 Hz, 6.71 ppm), CHO (1H, broad s, 5.76 ppm), CH (2H, m, 4.58-4.49 ppm), CH (1H, m, 4.04 ppm), CH₃O (3H, s, 3.97 ppm), CH (1H, d, 3.86 ppm), CH (7H, very broad, 1.8-2.6 ppm), Boc group (9H, s, 1.25 ppm) and t-butyl group (9H, s, 0.97 ppm).

MS. showed M+H⁺ at m/e 675 (100%).

HPLC peak 98% at 18.9 min.

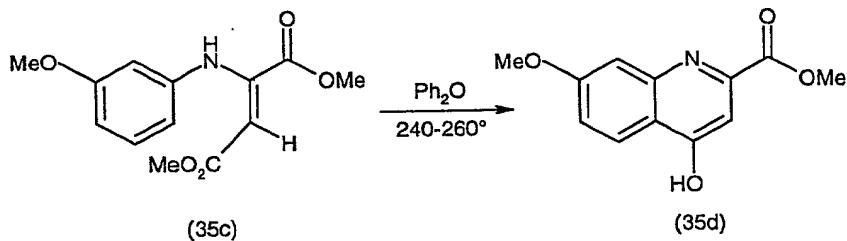
EXAMPLE 35

Synthesis of compound 333 (Table 3)



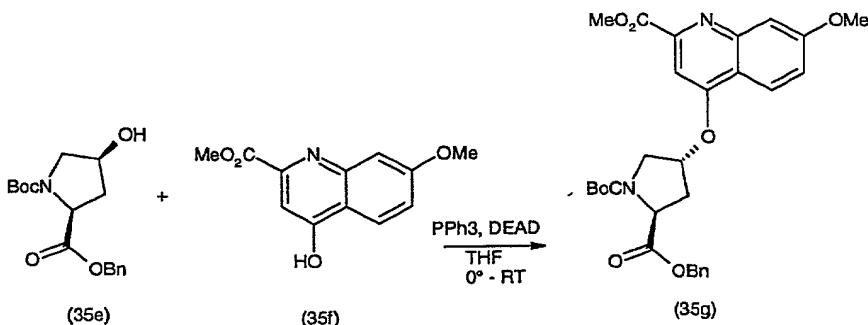
5 A solution of *m*-anisidine (**35a**) (9.15 mL, 81.4 mmoles) and dimethylacetylene-dicarboxylate (**35b**) (10.0 mL, 81.3 mmoles) in 160 mL of methanol is heated under reflux for 2 h. The solvent is removed *in vacuo* and the residue purified by a flash column chromatography (90:10 hexanes-ethyl acetate). Compound **35c** (17.0 g, 79% yield) is obtained as an orange oil.

10 ¹H NMR (CDCl₃) δ 9.62 (broad s, 1H), 7.17 (dd, J = 7 and 8.5 Hz, 1H), 6.66 – 6.62 (m, 1H), 6.49–6.45 (m, 2H), 5.38 (s, 1H), 3.77 (s, 3H), 3.74 (s, 3H), 3.71 (s, 3H).



Diphenylether (50 mL) is heated in a sand bath up to an internal temperature of $\approx 250^\circ$. Diester adduct (35c) (7.5 g, 28.3 mmoles), dissolved in 5 mL of diphenyl ether, is added within 2 min to the boiling solvent. The heating is maintained for 5 min and the reaction mixture is then allowed to cool down to room temperature. Rapidly a beige solid precipitated out. The solid is filtered and then triturated with methanol. To yield 4.1 g (62% yield) of the desired compound 35d.

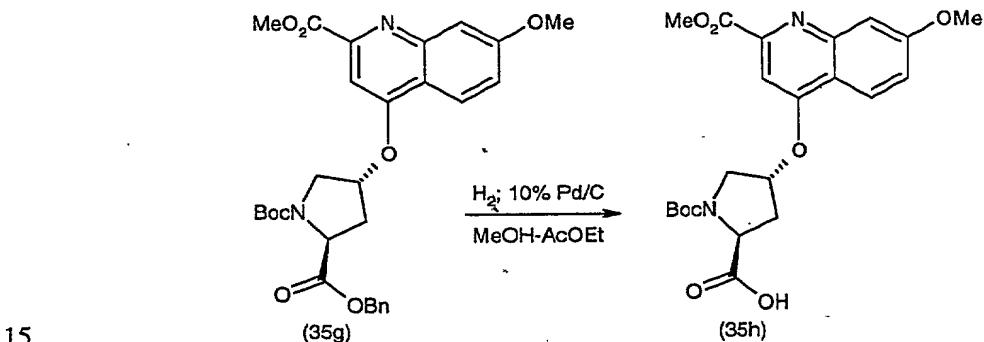
¹H NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ 7.97 (d, J = 9 Hz, 1H), 7.40 (d, J = 2 Hz, 1H), 6.96 (dd, J = 9 and 2Hz, 1H), 6.55 (s, 1H), 3.95 (s, 3H), 3.84 (s, 3H).



A solution of *cis*-4-hydroxy-L-proline derivative (**35e**) (1.71 g, 5.33 mmoles), 4-hydroxyquinoline derivative (**35f**) (1.25 g, 5.36 mmoles) and triphenylphosphine (2.80 g, 10.68 mmoles) in 75 mL of THF is cooled down to 0° for the addition drop to

5 drop (\approx 1h) of DEAD (1.70 mL, 10.80 mmoles). The reaction mixture was then allowed to warm up slowly to room temperature and the stirring was continued overnight. The solvent is removed *in vacuo* and the residue purified by a flash column chromatography (70:30 ethylacetate-hexanes). Compound **35g** (0.7 g of pure compound **35g**, and 1.8 g of compound **35g** contaminated with \approx 50% of 10 triphenylphosphate oxide) is obtained as a white solid.

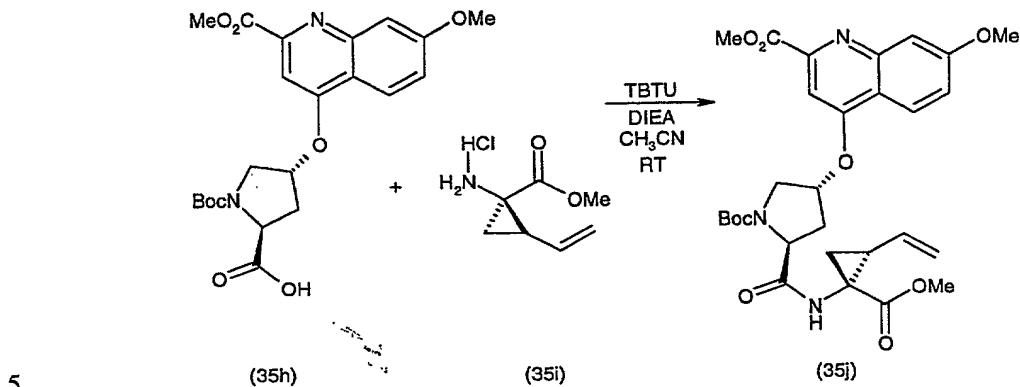
¹H NMR (CDCl₃) rotamers (4:6) δ 8.04 (d, J = 9 Hz, 1H), 7.54 (d, J = 2.5 Hz, 1H), 7.40-7.32 (m, 6H), 7.23 (dd, J = 9 and 2.5 Hz, 1H), 5.33-5.13 (m, 3H), 4.66 (t, J = 7.5 Hz, 0.4 H), 4.54 (t, J = 8 Hz, 0.6 H), 4.07 (s, 3H), 3.94 (s, 3H), 4.04=3.80 (m, 2H), 2.78-2.65 (m, 1H), 2.47-2.34 (m, 1H), 1.45 (s, 3.6H), 1.37 (s, 5.4H).



To proline benzyl ester derivative (**35g**) (0.70 g, 1.31 mmoles) in solution in a mixture of methanol-ethyl acetate (10 mL–10 mL) is added 100 mg of 10% Pd/C. The resulting suspension is stirred at room temperature under hydrogen atmosphere for 1 ½ h. The catalyst is then filtered on a Millex-HV Millipore (0.45 μ m filter unit) 20 and the solvents are evaporated *in vacuo*. Quantitative yield of the desired acid **35h** (0.59 g) is obtained.

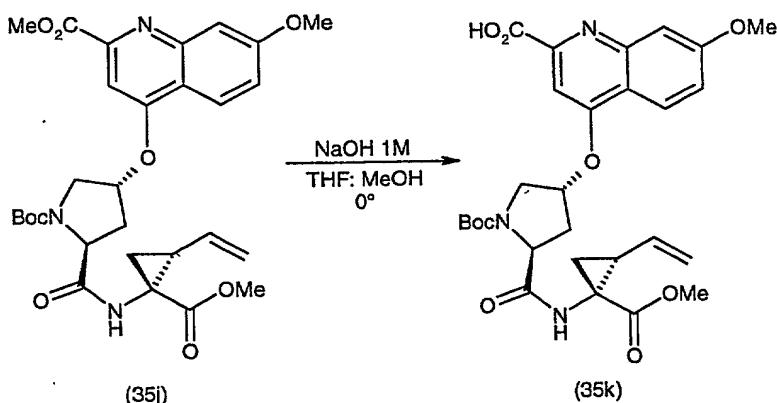
¹H NMR: (CDCl₃) rotamers 70:30 δ 8.06 (d, J = 9.5 Hz, 0.3 H), 8.01 (d, J = 9 Hz, 0.7

H), 7.56 (d, J = 2 Hz, 1H), 7.44 (broad s, 0.7 H), 7.41 (broad s, 0.3 H), 7.24 (dd, J = 9 and 2.5 Hz, 1H), 5.31-5.25 (m, 1H), 4.67 (t, J = 7.5 Hz, 0.7 H), 4.55 (t, J = 7.5 Hz, 0.3 H), 4.08 (s, 3H), 3.95 (s, 3H), 4.04-3.80 (m, 2H), 2.83-2.72 (m, 1H), 2.71-2.47 (m, 1H), 1.46 (s, 9H).

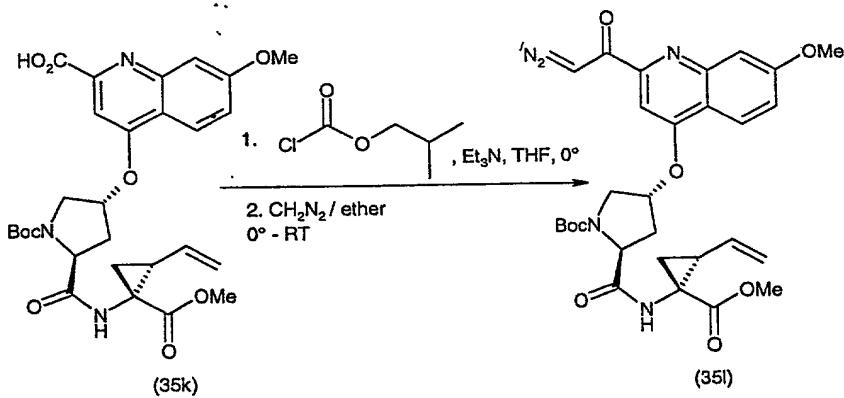


The salt of the amine **35i** (215 mg, 1.21 mmoles) in 7 mL of acetonitrile is treated with 0.95 mL of DIEA (5.45 mmoles). This solution is then added to a solution of acid **35h** (590 mg, 1.32 mmoles) and TBTU (389 mg, 1.21 mmoles) in 5 mL of CH₃CN the resulting solution is stirred at room temperature overnight. The solvent is removed *in vacuo* and the residue is diluted with ethylacetate and washed twice with a saturated solution of sodium bicarbonate once with brine and dried over MgSO₄. The solvent is removed *in vacuo* and the residue is purified by flash column chromatography (75:25 AcOEt-hexanes) to afford 527 mg (70% yield) of the desired dipeptide (**35j**).

15 ^1H NMR: (CDCl_3) δ 8.01 (d, $J = 9$ Hz, 1H), 7.55 (d, $J = 2.5$ Hz, 1H), 7.45 (s, 1H), 7.22 (dd, $J = 9$ and 2.5 Hz, 1H), 5.81-5.71 (m, 1H), 5.36-5.28 (m, 2H), 5.18-5.12 (m, 1H), 4.61-4.45 (m, 1H), 4.07 (s, 3H), 3.94 (s, 3H), 3.91-3.74 (m, 2H), 3.72 (s, 3H), 2.99-2.84 (m, 1H), 2.49-2.34 (m, 1H), 2.20-2.08 (m, 1H), 1.97-1.84 (m, 1H), 1.58-1.52 (m, 1H), 1.44 (s, 9H).



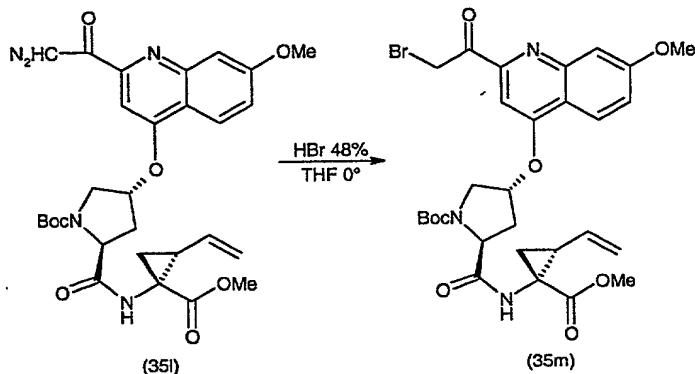
The diester **35j** (716 mg, 1.25 mmoles) in solution in a mixture of THF:MeOH (1.5 mL-1.5 mL) is cooled to 0° before being treated with an aqueous solution of NaOH 1M (1.25 mL, 1.25 mmoles). After 1 h of stirring at 0°, 3 drops of glacial acetic acid are added to neutralize the NaOH. The solvents are removed *in vacuo* and the compound is dried on the pump for a few hours.



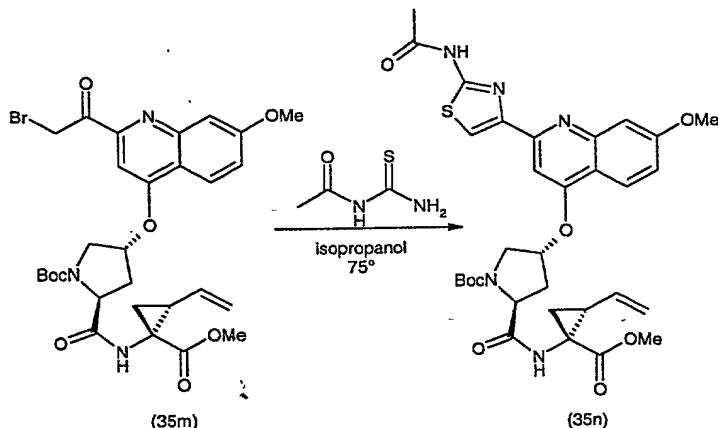
A solution of the acid **35k** sodium salt (1.25 mmoles) and Et₃N (0.19 mL, 1.36 mmoles) in 8 mL of THF is cooled to 0° and isobutyl chloroformate (0.18 mL, 1.39 mmoles) is added. After 40 min diazomethane (9 mL, 6.30 mmoles) is added and the resulting solution is stirred at 0° for 30 min and at room temperature for 2 h. The solvents are removed *in vacuo*. The residue, diluted with ethyl acetate, is washed twice with a saturated solution of NaHCO₃ once with brine and dried over MgSO₄, the solvent is evaporated under *vacuo* and the residue is purified by flash column chromatography (50:50 Hexanes/AcOEt) to afford 378 mg (52% yield) of the expected diazoketone **35l**.

¹H NMR: (CDCl₃) δ 8.00 (d, J = 9 Hz, 1H), 7.42 (s, 1H), 7.35 (d, J = 2.5 Hz, 1H), 7.20 (dd, J = 9 and 2.5 Hz, 1H), 6.92 (s, 1H), 5.81-5.71 (m, 1H), 5.35-5.28 (m, 3H), 5.17-5.13 (m, 1H), 4.61-4.40 (m, 1H), 3.97 (s, 3H), 3.96-3.74 (m, 2H), 3.72 (s, 3H),

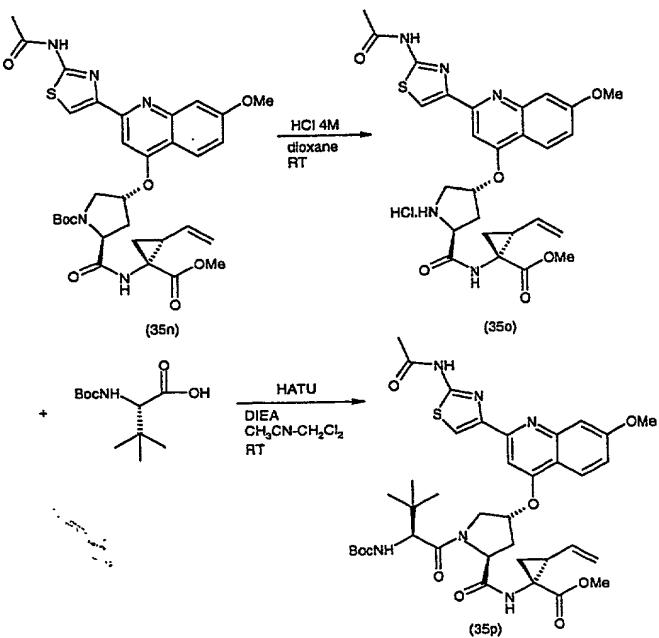
2.94-2.38 (m, 2H), 2.18-2.06 (m, 1H), 1.98-1.84 (m, 1H), 1.57-1.52 (m, 1H), 1.42 (s, 9H).



To a cooled (0°) solution of the diazoketone **35I** (0.37 g, 0.642 mmoles) in 15 mL of THF is added 0.25 mL of HBr 48%. The resulting yellow solution is stirred at 0° for 1 h. The reaction mixture is partitioned between ethyl acetate and a saturated solution of NaHCO₃. The organic phase is washed one more time with NaHCO₃ and dried with NaSO₄. After evaporation of the solvents *in vacuo*, 0.36 g (90% yield) of the α -bromoketone **35m** is isolated.

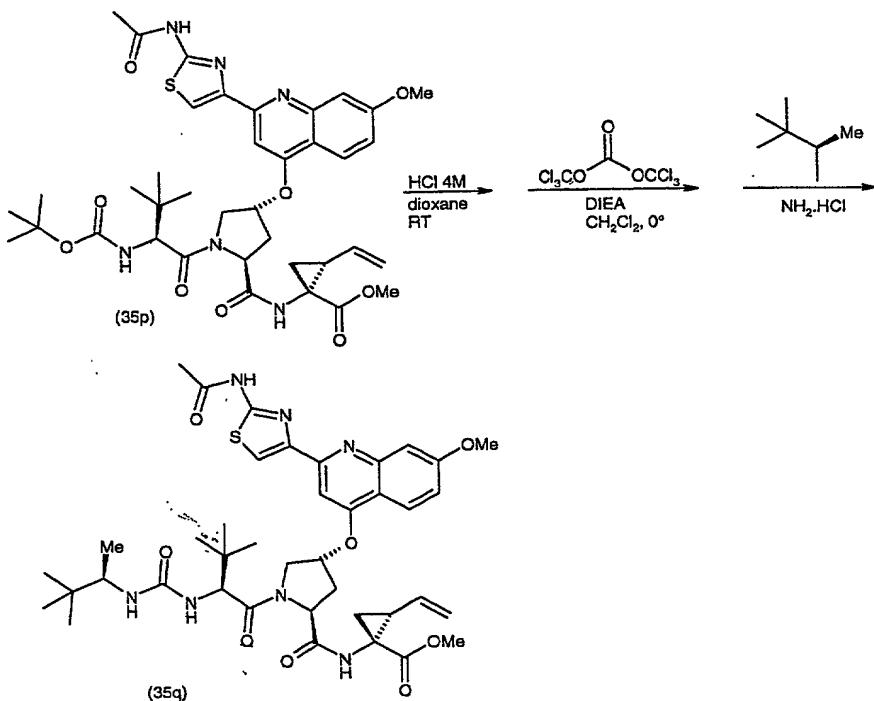


The α -bromoketone **35m** (170 mg, 0.271 mmoles) in 10 mL of isopropanol is treated with 1-acetyl-2-thiourea (64 mg, 0.542 mmoles). The resulting solution is heated at 75° for 1 h. The solvent is removed *in vacuo*. The residue is diluted with ethyl acetate and washed twice with a saturated solution of NaHCO₃, once with brine and dried with MgSO₄. Evaporation of the solvent *in vacuo* afforded 182 mg (> 100%) of crude material **35n**.



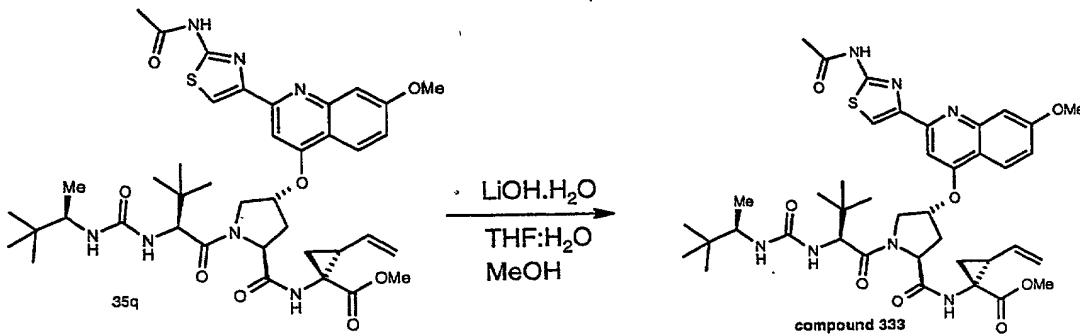
The dipeptide **35n** (145 mg, 0.223 mmoles) is treated with 3 mL of a 4M solution of HCl in dioxane. The resulting solution is stirred at room temperature for 1 h. The solvents are removed *in vacuo* and the residue is dried over the pump.

- 5 The salt of the amine **35o** in 5 mL of CH_3CN is treated with 195 μL (1,12 mmoles) of DIEA. This solution is then added to the solution of the Boc-*tert*-butylglycine (103 mg, 0.446 mmoles) and HATU (186 mg, 0.489 mmoles) in 3 mL of CH_3CN . The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature overnight. The CH_3CN is evaporated *in vacuo*. The residue diluted with ethyl acetate is washed twice with a saturated solution of NaHCO_3 , once with brine and dried with MgSO_4 . After removal of the solvent, 274 mg of the crude tripeptide **35p** is obtained (> 100%).
- 10



The tripeptide **35p** (56 mg, 0.0733 mmoles), in 4 mL of a 4M solution of HCl in dioxane, is stirred at room temperature for 2 h. The solvent is removed *in vacuo* and the residue dried over the pump.

- 5 The salt of the amine obtained is dissolved in 4 mL of CH_2Cl_2 and treated with 0.13 mL of DIEA (0.746 mmoles) followed by 26 mg of triphosgene (0.0876 mmoles). After 3 h incubation, 1,2,2-trimethylpropylamine (20 mg, 0.146 mmoles) is added (synthesized as described in Moss N., Gauthier J., Ferland J.M., Feb. 1995, *SynLett.* (2), 142-144). The ice bath is removed and the reaction mixture is stirred
- 10 at room temperature overnight. The CH_2Cl_2 is evaporated *in vacuo*. The residue, diluted with ethyl acetate is washed twice with a saturated solution of NaHCO_3 , once with brine and dried with MgSO_4 to afford 60 mg ($\approx 100\%$) of the desired urea **35q**.



A solution of methyl ester **35q** (57 mg, 0.0721 mmoles) in a mixture of THF:H₂O (2.5 mL:1mL) is treated with solid LiOH•H₂O (25 mg, 0.595 mmoles) and 1mL of MeOH is added in order to clarify the solution. After stirring for 4 h at room temperature, the reaction is neutralized by addition of a 1M solution of HCl. The solvents are

5 removed *in vacuo* and the residue is purified by a preparative chromatography. The compound dissolved in 2.5 mL of MeOH, is injected into an equilibrated Whatman Partisil 10-ODS-3 (2.2 x 50 cm) C₁₈ reverse phase column. Purification program: Linear Gradient at 20 mL/nm, λ 220 nm, inject at 10% A up to 60% A in 60 min. A:0.06% TFA/CH₃CN; B:0.06%; TFA/H₂O. Fractions were analyzed by analytical

10 HPLC. The product collected was lyophilized to provide 15 mg of compound **333** as an off white solid (27% yield).

¹H NMR: (DMSO-d₆) δ 8.88 (s, 0.2H), 8.84 (d, J=4.5 Hz, 0.2H), 8.68 (d, J = 8.5 Hz, 0. H), 8.56 (s, 0.8H), 8.40-8.13 (m, 1.5H), 7.96 (d, J = 9.0 Hz, 0.2H), 7.72-7.44 (m, 2.4H), 7.35-7.09 (m, 1.2H); 6.98 (d, J = 9 Hz, 0.2H), 6.15 (d, J = 9Hz, 0.2H), 6.06 (d, J = 9Hz, 0.8H), 5.93 (d, J = 9.5 Hz, 0.24H), 5.86 (d, J = 9Hz, 0.8H), 5.79-5.67 (m, 1H), 5.69-5.44 (m, 1H), 5.24-5.14 (m, 1H), 5.09-5.01 (m, 1H), 4.50-4.35 (m, 2H), 4.24 (d, J = 9.0Hz, 0.2H), 4.20 (d, J = 9.0 Hz, 0.8H), 4.06-3.98 (m, 2H), 3.95 (s, 3H), 3.77-3.60 (m, 2H), 2.58-2.50 (m, 1H), 2.33-2.28 (m, 1H), 2.22 (s, 2.4H), 2.21 (s, 0.6H), 2.02 (q, J – 9Hz, 1H), 1.56-1.38 (m, 1H), 1.28-1.22 (m, 1H), 0.97 (s, 9H), 0.83 (d, J = 6Hz, 3H), 0.72 (s, 9H).

MS(FAB) 778.3 (m + H)⁺, 776.3 (M – H)⁻.

EXAMPLE 36

Cloning, expression and purification of the recombinant HCV NS3 protease type 1b.

25 Serum from an HCV-infected patient was obtained through an external collaboration (Bernard Willems MD, Hôpital St-Luc, Montréal, Canada and Dr. Donald Murphy, Laboratoire de Santé Publique du Québec, Ste-Anne de Bellevue, Canada). An engineered full-length cDNA template of the HCV genome was constructed from DNA fragments obtained by reverse transcription-PCR (RT-PCR) of serum RNA and

30 using specific primers selected on the basis of homology between other genotype 1b strains. From the determination of the entire genomic sequence, a genotype 1b was assigned to the HCV isolate according to the classification of Simmonds et al. (J. Clin. Microbiol., (1993), 31, p.1493-1503). The amino acid sequence of the non-structural region, NS2-NS4B, was shown to be greater than 93% identical to HCV

genotype 1b (BK, JK and 483 isolates) and 88% identical to HCV genotype 1a (HCV-1 isolate). A DNA fragment encoding the polyprotein precursor (NS3/NS4A/NS4B/NS5A/NS5B) was generated by PCR and introduced into eukaryotic expression vectors. After transient transfection, the polyprotein

5 processing mediated by the HCV NS3 protease was demonstrated by the presence of the mature NS3 protein using Western blot analysis. The mature NS3 protein was not observed with expression of a polyprotein precursor containing the mutation S1165A, which inactivates the NS3 protease, confirming the functionality of the HCV NS3 protease.

10 The DNA fragment encoding the recombinant HCV NS3 protease (amino acid 1027 to 1206) was cloned in the pET11d bacterial expression vector. The NS3 protease expression in *E. coli* BL21(DE3)pLysS was induced by incubation with 1 mM IPTG for 3 h at 22°C. A typical fermentation (18 L) yielded approximately 100 g of wet cell paste. The cells were resuspended in lysis buffer (3.0 mL/g) consisting of 25 mM sodium phosphate, pH 7.5, 10% glycerol (v/v), 1 mM EDTA, 0.01% NP-40 and stored at -80°C. Cells were thawed and homogenized following the addition of 5 mM DTT. Magnesium chloride and DNase were then added to the homogenate at final concentrations of 20 mM and 20 µg/mL respectively. After a 25 min incubation at 4°C, the homogenate was sonicated and centrifuged at 15000 x g for 30 min at 4°
15 C. The pH of the supernatant was then adjusted to 6.5 using a 1M sodium phosphate solution.

An additional gel filtration chromatography step was added to the 2 step purification procedure described in WO 95/22985 (incorporated herein by reference). Briefly, the supernatant from the bacterial extract was loaded on a SP HiTrap column
20 (Pharmacia) previously equilibrated at a flow rate of 2 mL/min in buffer A (50 mM sodium phosphate, pH 6.5, 10% glycerol, 1 mM EDTA, 5 mM DTT, 0.01% NP-40). The column was then washed with buffer A containing 0.15 M NaCl and the protease eluted by applying 10 column volumes of a linear 0.15 to 0.3 M NaCl gradient. NS3 protease-containing fractions were pooled and diluted to a final NaCl
25 concentration of 0.1 M. The enzyme was further purified on a HiTrap Heparin column (Pharmacia) equilibrated in buffer B (25 mM sodium phosphate, pH 7.5, 10% glycerol, 5 mM DTT, 0.01% NP-40). The sample was loaded at a flow rate of 3 mL/min. The column was then washed with buffer B containing 0.15 M NaCl at a flow rate of 1.5 mL/min. Two step washes were performed in the presence of buffer
30

B containing 0.3 or 1M NaCl. The protease was recovered in the 0.3M NaCl wash, diluted 3-fold with buffer B, reapplied on the HiTrap Heparin column and eluted with buffer B containing 0.4 M NaCl. Finally, the NS3 protease-containing fractions were applied on a Superdex 75 HiLoad 16/60 column (Pharmacia) equilibrated in buffer B
5 containing 0.3 M NaCl. The purity of the HCV NS3 protease obtained from the pooled fractions was judged to be greater than 95% by SDS-PAGE followed by densitometry analysis.

The enzyme was stored at -80°C and was thawed on ice and diluted just prior to use.

10 **EXAMPLE 37**

Recombinant HCV NS3 protease/NS4A cofactor peptide radiometric assay.

The enzyme was cloned, expressed and prepared according to the protocol described in Example 36. The enzyme was stored at -80°C, thawed on ice and diluted just prior to use in the assay buffer containing the NS4A cofactor peptide.

15 The substrate used for the NS3 protease/ NS4A cofactor peptide radiometric assay, DDIVPC-SMSYTW, is cleaved between the cysteine and the serine residues by the enzyme. The sequence DDIVPC-SMSYTW corresponds to the NS5A/NS5B natural cleavage site in which the cysteine residue in P2 has been substituted for a proline. The peptide substrate DDIVPC-SMSYTW and the tracer biotin-DDIVPC-SMS[¹²⁵I]-Y]TW are incubated with the recombinant NS3 protease and the NS4A peptide
20 cofactor KKGSVVIVGRIILSGRK (molar ratio enzyme: cofactor 1:100) in the absence or presence of inhibitors. The separation of substrate from products is performed by adding avidin-coated agarose beads to the assay mixture followed by filtration. The amount of SMS[¹²⁵I]-Y]TW product found in the filtrate allows for the
25 calculation of the percentage of substrate conversion and of the percentage of inhibition.

A. Reagents

Tris and Tris-HCl (UltraPure) were obtained from Gibco-BRL. Glycerol (UltraPure), MES and BSA were purchased from Sigma. TCEP was obtained from Pierce,
30 DMSO from Aldrich and NaOH from Anachemia.

Assay buffer: 50 mM Tris HCl, pH 7.5, 30% (w/v) glycerol, 1 mg/mL BSA, 1 mM TCEP (TCEP added just prior to use from a 1 M stock solution in water).

Substrate: DDIVPCSMSYTW, 25 µM final concentration (from a 2 mM stock solution in DMSO stored at -20°C to avoid oxidation).

Tracer: reduced mono iodinated substrate biotin DDIVPC SMS[¹²⁵I Y]TW (~1 nM final concentration).

HCV NS3 protease type 1b, 25 nM final concentration (from a stock solution in 50 mM sodium phosphate, pH 7.5, 10% glycerol, 300 mM NaCl, 5 mM DTT, 0.01% NP-5 40).

NS4A Cofactor peptide: KKGSVVIVGRIILSGRK, 2.5 µM final concentration (from a 2 mM stock solution in DMSO stored at -20°C).

B. Protocol

The assay was performed in a 96-well polystyrene plate from Costar. Each well 10 contained:

20 µL substrate/tracer in assay buffer;

10 µL ± inhibitor in 20% DMSO/assay buffer;

10 µL NS3 protease 1b/NS4 cofactor peptide (molar ratio 1:100).

Blank (no inhibitor and no enzyme) and control (no inhibitor) were also prepared on 15 the same assay plate.

The enzymatic reaction was initiated by the addition of the enzyme/NS4A peptide solution and the assay mixture was incubated for 40 min at 23°C under gentle agitation. Ten (10) µL of 0.5N NaOH were added and 10 µL 1 M MES, pH 5.8 were added to quench the enzymatic reaction.

20 Twenty (20) µL of avidin-coated agarose beads (purchased from Pierce) were added in a Millipore MADP N65 filtration plate. The quenched assay mixture was transferred to the filtration plate, and incubated for 60 min at 23°C under gentle agitation.

The plates were filtered using a Millipore MultiScreen Vacuum Manifold Filtration 25 apparatus, and 40 µL of the filtrate was transferred in an opaque 96-well plate containing 60 µL of scintillation fluid per well.

The filtrates were counted on a Packard TopCount instrument using a ¹²⁵I-liquid protocol for 1 minute.

The % inhibition was calculated with the following equation:

$$30 \quad 100 - [(counts_{inh} - counts_{blank}) / (counts_{ctrl} - counts_{blank})] \times 100$$

A non-linear curve fit with the Hill model was applied to the inhibition-concentration data, and the 50% effective concentration (IC_{50}) was calculated by the use of SAS software (Statistical Software System; SAS Institute, Inc. Cary, N.C.).

EXAMPLE 38**Full-length NS3-NS4A heterodimer protein assay**

The NS2-NS5B-3' non coding region was cloned by RT-PCR into the pCR®3 vector (Invitrogen) using RNA extracted from the serum of an HCV genotype 1b infected individual (provided by Dr. Bernard Willems, Hôpital St-Luc, Montréal, Québec, Canada). The NS3-NS4A DNA region was then subcloned by PCR into the pFastBac™ HTa baculovirus expression vector (Gibco/BRL). The vector sequence includes a region encoding a 28-residue N-terminal sequence which contains a hexahistidine tag. The Bac-to-Bac™ baculovirus expression system (Gibco/BRL) was used to produce the recombinant baculovirus. The full length mature NS3 and NS4A heterodimer protein (His-NS3-NS4AFL) was expressed by infecting 10^6 Sf21 cells/mL with the recombinant baculovirus at a multiplicity of infection of 0.1-0.2 at 27°C. The infected culture was harvested 48 to 64 h later by centrifugation at 4°C. The cell pellet was homogenized in 50mM NaPO₄, pH 7.5, 40% glycerol (w/v), 2mM β-mercaptoethanol, in presence of a cocktail of protease inhibitors. His-NS3-NS4AFL was then extracted from the cell lysate with 1.5% NP-40, 0.5% Triton X-100, 0.5M NaCl, and a DNase treatment. After ultracentrifugation, the soluble extract was diluted 4-fold and bound on a Pharmacia Hi-Trap Ni-chelating column. The His-NS3-NS4AFL was eluted in a >90% pure form (as judged by SDS-PAGE), using a 50 to 400 mM imidazole gradient. The His-NS3-NS4AFL was stored at -80° C in 50 mM sodium phosphate, pH 7.5, 10% (w/v) glycerol, 0.5 M NaCl, 0.25 M imidazole, 0.1% NP-40. It was thawed on ice and diluted just prior to use. The protease activity of His-NS3-NS4AFL was assayed in 50 mM Tris-HCl, pH 8.0, 0.25 M sodium citrate, 0.01% (w/v) n-dodecyl-β-D-maltoside, 1 mM TCEP. Five (5) μM of the internally quenched substrate anthranilyl-DDIVPAbu[C(O)-O]-AMY(3-NO₂)TW-OH in presence of various concentrations of inhibitor were incubated with 1.5 nM of His-NS3-NS4AFL for 45 min at 23°C. The final DMSO concentration did not exceed 5.25%. The reaction was terminated with the addition of 1M MES, pH 5.8. Fluorescence of the N-terminal product was monitored on a Perkin-Elmer LS-50B fluorometer equipped with a 96-well plate reader (excitation wavelength: 325 nm; emission wavelength: 423 nm).

The % inhibition was calculated with the following equation:

$$100 - [(counts_{inh} - counts_{blank}) / (counts_{ctrl} - counts_{blank})] \times 100$$

A non-linear curve fit with the Hill model was applied to the inhibition-concentration data, and the 50% effective concentration (IC_{50}) was calculated by the use of SAS software (Statistical Software System; SAS Institute, Inc. Cary, N.C.).

EXAMPLE 39

5 NS3 Protease Cell-based assay

This assay was done with Huh-7 cells, a human cell line derived from a hepatoma, co-transfected with 2 DNA constructs:

- one expressing a polyprotein comprising the HCV non-structural proteins fused to tTA in the following order: NS3-NS4A-NS4B-NS5A-tTA (called NS3);
- 10 - the other expressing the reporter protein, secreted alkaline phosphatase, under the control of tTA (called SEAP).

The polyprotein must be cleaved by the NS3 protease for the mature proteins to be released. Upon release of the mature proteins, it is believed that the viral proteins will form a complex at the membrane of the endoplasmic reticulum while tTA will 15 migrate to the nucleus and transactivate the SEAP gene. Therefore, reduction of NS3 proteolytic activity should lead to reduction of mature tTA levels and concomitant decrease in SEAP activity.

To control for other effects of the compounds, a parallel transfection was done where a construct expressing tTA alone (called tTA) was co-transfected with the 20 SEAP construct such that SEAP activity is independent of NS3 proteolytic activity.

Protocol of the assay: Huh-7 cells, grown in CHO-SFMII + 10% FCS (fetal calf serum), were co-transfected with either NS3 and SEAP or tTA and SEAP, using the FuGene protocol (Boehringer Mannheim). After 5 h at 37°, the cells were washed, trypsinized and plated (at 80 000 cells/well) in 96-well plates containing a range of 25 concentrations of the compounds to be tested. After a 24-h incubation period, an aliquot of the medium was drawn and the SEAP activity in this aliquot was measured with the Phospha-Light kit (Tropix).

Analysis of the percent inhibition of SEAP activity with respect to compound concentration was performed with the SAS software to obtain the EC_{50} .
30 The toxicity of the compound (TC_{50}) was then assessed using the MTT assay as follows:

20 μ L of a MTT solution (5mg/ml medium) was added per well and incubated at 37° for 4 hrs;
the medium was removed and 50 μ l of 0.01N HCl + 10% Triton X-100 was added;

after shaking at RT for at least 1 hr, the OD of each well was read at 595 nm wavelength.

The TC₅₀ was calculated in the same way as the EC₅₀.

EXAMPLE 40

5 Specificity assays

The specificity of the compounds was determined against a variety of serine proteases: human leukocyte elastase, porcine pancreatic elastase and bovine pancreatic α -chymotrypsin and one cysteine protease: human liver cathepsin B. In all cases a 96-well plate format protocol using a colorimetric p-nitroaniline (pNA) substrate specific for each enzyme was used. Each assay included a 1 h enzyme-inhibitor pre-incubation at 30°C followed by addition of substrate and hydrolysis to \approx 30% conversion as measured on a UV Thermomax® microplate reader. Substrate concentrations were kept as low as possible compared to K_M to reduce substrate competition. Compound concentrations varied from 300 to 0.06 μ M depending on their potency.

The final conditions for each assay were as follows:

- 50mM Tris-HCl pH 8, 0.5 M Na₂SO₄, 50 mM NaCl, 0.1 mM EDTA, 3% DMSO, 0.01% Tween-20 with;
- [100 μ M Succ-AAPF-pNA and 250 pM α -chymotrypsin], [133 μ M Succ-AAA-pNA and 8 nM porcine elastase], [133 μ M Succ-AAV-pNA and 8 nM leukocyte elastase]; or
- [100 mM NaHPO₄ pH 6, 0.1 mM EDTA, 3% DMSO, 1mM TCEP, 0.01% Tween-20, 30 μ M Z-FR-pNA and 5 nM cathepsin B (the stock enzyme was activated in buffer containing 20 mM TCEP before use)].

25 A representative example is summarized below for porcine pancreatic elastase: In a polystyrene flat-bottom 96-well plate were added using a Biomek liquid handler (Beckman):

- 40 μ L of assay buffer (50 mM Tris-HCl pH 8, 50 mM NaCl, 0.1 mM EDTA);
- 20 μ L of enzyme solution (50 mM Tris-HCl pH 8, 50 mM NaCl, 0.1 mM EDTA, 0.02% Tween-20, 40 nM porcine pancreatic elastase); and
- 20 μ L of inhibitor solution (50 mM Tris-HCl, pH 8, 50 mM NaCl, 0.1 mM EDTA, 0.02% Tween-20, 1.5 mM-0.3 μ M inhibitor, 15% v/v DMSO).

After 60 min pre-incubation at 30°C, 20 μ L of substrate solution (50 mM Tris-HCl,

pH 8, 0.5 M Na₂SO₄, 50 mM NaCl, 0.1 mM EDTA, 665 µM Succ-AAA-pNA) were added to each well and the reaction was further incubated at 30°C for 60 min after which time the absorbance was read on the UV Thermomax® plate reader. Rows of wells were allocated for controls (no inhibitor) and for blanks (no inhibitor and no enzyme).

The sequential 2-fold dilutions of the inhibitor solution were performed on a separate plate by the liquid handler using 50 mM Tris-HCl pH 8, 50 mM NaCl, 0.1 mM EDTA, 0.02% Tween-20, 15% DMSO. All other specificity assays were performed in a similar fashion.

10 The percentage of inhibition was calculated using the formula:

$$[1 - ((UV_{inh} - UV_{blank}) / (UV_{ctrl} - UV_{blank}))] \times 100$$

A non-linear curve fit with the Hill model was applied to the inhibition-concentration data, and the 50% effective concentration (IC₅₀) was calculated by the use of SAS software (Statistical Software System; SAS Institute, Inc., Cary, N.C.).

TABLES OF COMPOUNDS

The following tables list compounds representative of the invention. Compounds of the invention were assayed either in one or both of the assays of Examples 37 and 38 and were found to be active with IC₅₀ below 50μM.

5

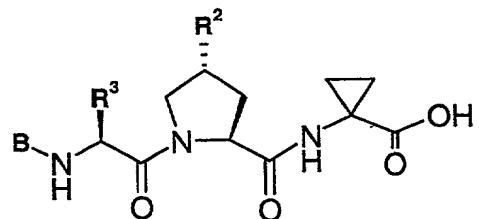
Activity in cells and specificity:

Representative compounds of the invention were also tested in the surrogate cell-based assay of Example 39, and in one or several assays of Example 40. For example, compound 601 from Table 6 was found to have an IC₅₀ of 50 nM in the 10 assay of Example 37 and 30nM in the assay of Example 38. The EC₅₀ as determined by the assay of Example 39 is 8.2 μM. In the specificity assays of Example 40, the same compound was found to have the following activity: HLE >75μM; PPE >75μM; α-Chym. >75 μM; Cat. B >75μM. These results indicate that this family of compounds is highly specific for the NS3 protease and at least certain 15 members of this family are active in a surrogate cell-based assay.

The following abbreviations are used within the present tables:

MS: Mass spectrometric data; Ac: acetyl; Bn: benzyl; Boc: *tert*-butyloxycarbonyl; cHex: cyclohexyl; Chg: cyclohexylglycine (2-amino-2-cyclohexyl-acetic acid); iPr: isopropyl; O-Bn: benzyloxy; Ph: phenyl; *t*-Bu: *tert*-butyl; Tbg: *tert*-butylglycine; 1- or 20 2-Np: 1- or 2-naphthyl; 1- or 2-NpCH₂O: 1, or 2-naphthylmethoxy.

TABLE 1



Tab 1 Cpd#	B	R_3	R_2	MS	IC_{50} (μM)
101	Boc	cHex	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	594	43
102		cHex	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	632	45
103		cHex	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	642	42
104		cHex	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	728	29.5
105		cHex	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	619	47
106	Boc	cHex		702	2.8
107		cHex	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	720 $\text{M}+\text{Na}^+$	34
108	Boc	iPr		662	8.9
109	acetyl	cHex		644	6.3

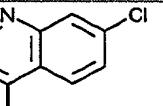
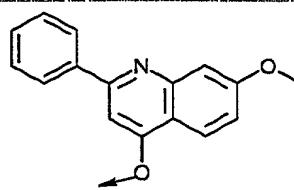
Tab 1 Cpd#	B	R ₃	R ₂	MS	IC ₅₀ (μM)
110	Boc	i-Pr		575.1	9.7
111	Boc	t-Bu		661.3	0.475

TABLE 2

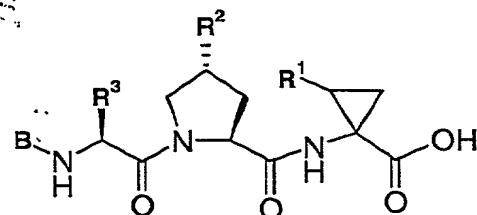


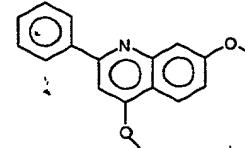
Table 2 Cpd #	B	R ₃	R ₂	R ₁ anti to carboxy	MS	IC ₅₀ (μM)
201	Boc	cyclohexyl	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	ethyl (one isomer)	622	15
202	Boc	cyclohexyl	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	ethyl (other isomer)	622	40
203	Boc	t-Bu		vinyl 1 <i>R</i> , 2 <i>R</i>	687.5	0.082

TABLE 3

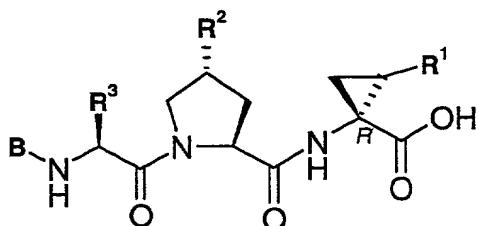


Table 3 Cpd #	B	R ₃	R ₂	R ₁ <i>syn to</i> <i>carboxyl</i>	MS	IC ₅₀ (μM)
301	Boc	cHex	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	ethyl	622	7.7
302		iPr	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	ethyl	582	12.5
303		cHex	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	ethyl	622	11
304	Boc	cHex		ethyl	623	32
305	Boc	cHex	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	vinyl	620	3.2
306	Boc	cHex		vinyl	607	0.8
307	Boc	cHex		vinyl	728	0.27
308	Boc	cHex		vinyl	606	1.6
309	Boc	cHex		vinyl	606	5
310	Boc	cHex		vinyl	607	2.5
311	Boc	cHex		vinyl	641	0.56

Table 3 Cpd #	B	R ₃	R ₂	R ₁ <i>syn</i> to carboxyl	MS	IC ₅₀ (μM)
312	Boc	cHex		vinyl	607	8.5
313	Boc	cHex		vinyl	621	2.5
314	Boc	cHex		vinyl	683	0.14
315	Boc	cHex		vinyl	698	0.66
316	Acetyl	cHex		vinyl	625	1.9
317	Boc	cHex		vinyl	740	0.32
318	CF ₃ -C(O)-	<i>i</i> -Pr		vinyl	639.3	0.88
319		cHex		vinyl	732.3	1.2
320		cHex		vinyl	704.3	0.65

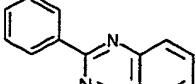
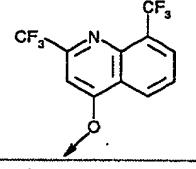
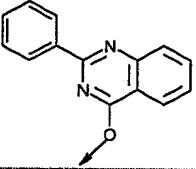
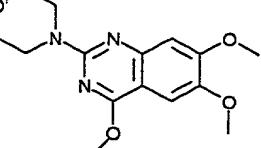
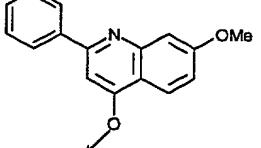
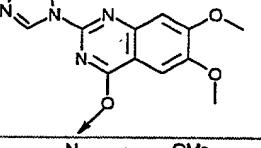
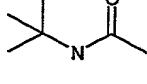
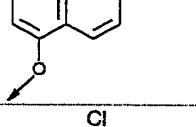
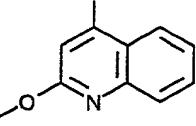
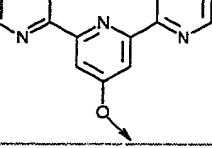
Table 3 Cpd #	B	R ₃	R ₂	R ₁ <i>syn to</i> <i>carboxyl</i>	MS	IC ₅₀ (μM)
321	Boc	t-Bu		vinyl	658.7	0.19
322	Boc	t-Bu		vinyl	717.6	1.95
323	Boc	t-Bu			672.4	0.64
324	Boc	t-Bu		vinyl	727.5	0.05
325	Boc	t-Bu			701.4	0.153
326	Boc	t-Bu		vinyl	708.3	0.32
327		t-Bu		vinyl	610.3	0.045
328	Boc	t-Bu		vinyl	615.3	3.2
329	Boc	t-Bu		vinyl	685.3	0.36

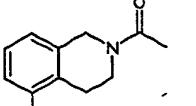
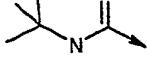
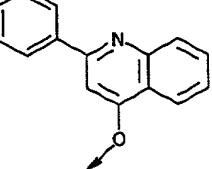
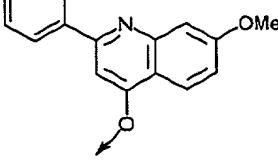
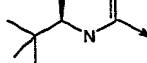
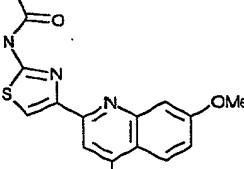
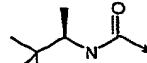
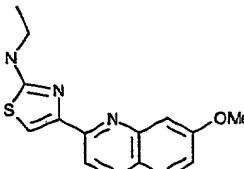
Table 3 Cpd #	B	R ₃	R ₂	R ₁ <i>syn</i> to carboxyl	MS	I _C ₅₀ (μ M)
330	Boc	<i>t</i> -Bu		vinyl	627.5	6
331		<i>t</i> -Bu		vinyl	656.5	0.071
332	Boc	<i>t</i> -Bu		ethyl	689.3	0.13
333		<i>t</i> -Bu		vinyl	778.3	0.003
334		<i>t</i> -Bu		vinyl	764.4	0.007

TABLE 4

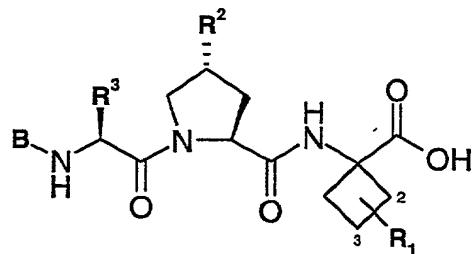


Table 4 Cpd #	B	R ₃	R ₂	R ₁	MS	IC ₅₀ (μM)
401	Boc	i-Pr		H	589.1	5.8
402	Boc	t-Bu		H	603.6	7.9
403	Boc	t-Bu		H	675.4	0.132
404	Boc	t-Bu		3-(=CH ₂)	687.1	0.6
405	Boc	t-Bu		2-vinyl	702.3	0.220
406	Boc	t-Bu		2-Et	703.3	0.4

104

TABLE 5

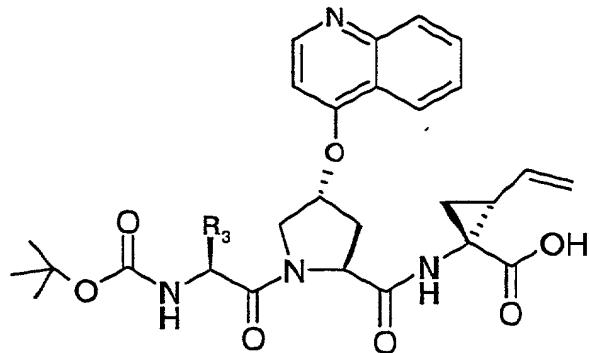


Table 5 Cpd #	R ₃	MS	IC ₅₀ (μM)
501	t-Bu	581.3	0.4
502	H	539.2	6.2
503		625.3	0.79
504		582.6	2.6
505		583.2	0.79
506		659.2	1.3
507		670.2	0.98
508		703.3	3.1
509		581.3	0.377

105

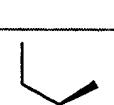
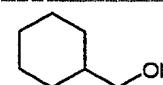
Table 5 Cpd #	R ₃	MS	IC ₅₀ (μM)
510		581.2	0.255
511		637.2	2.1

TABLE 6

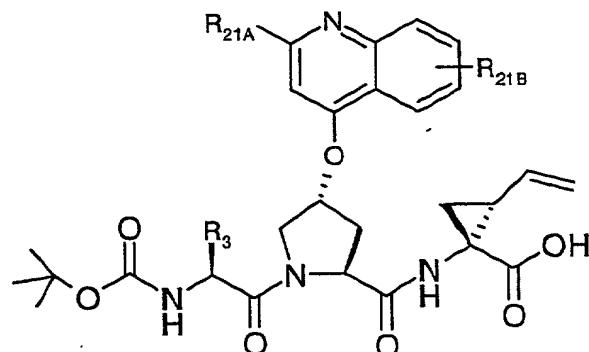


Table 6 Cpd #	<i>R</i> ₃	<i>R</i> _{21A}	<i>R</i> _{21B}	MS	<i>IC</i> ₅₀ (μ M)
601	<i>i</i> -Pr	Ph	7-OMe	673.3	0.05
602	<i>t</i> -Bu	Ph	8-OMe, 7-OMe	717.2	0.041
603	<i>i</i> -Pr	Ph	7-ethyl	671.2	0.195
604	<i>t</i> -Bu	--	7-OMe	611.2	0.073
605	<i>t</i> -Bu	Ph	7-O- <i>i</i> Pr	715.3	0.195
606	<i>t</i> -Bu	--	7-Cl	615.2	0.48
607	<i>i</i> Pr	--	7-Cl	601.2	0.45
608	CH ₂ - <i>i</i> Pr	--	7-Cl	615.3	1.45
609	<i>t</i> -Bu		--	680.2	1.7
610	<i>t</i> -Bu	Cl	--	613.3	0.25
611	<i>t</i> -Bu	Ph	7-N(Me) ₂	700.5	0.035
612	<i>t</i> -Bu		--	666.4	0.278
613	<i>t</i> -Bu		--	650.4	1.0
614	<i>t</i> -Bu		--	664.5	2.2
615	<i>t</i> -Bu	--	7-N(Me) ₂	624.5	0.16
616	<i>t</i> -Bu		--	678.4 (M-H) ⁺	0.087

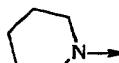
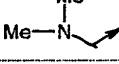
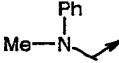
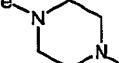
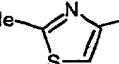
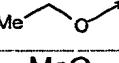
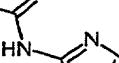
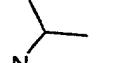
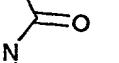
Table 6 Cpd #	R ₃	R _{21A}	R _{21B}	MS	IC ₅₀ (μM)
617	t-Bu		--	664.5	0.345
618	t-Bu		--	638.5	2.3
619	t-Bu		--	700.5	3.0
620	t-Bu		--	679.5	0.72
621	t-Bu		--	678.3	0.058
622	t-Bu		--	625.4	0.16
623	t-Bu	MeO-	--	611.3	0.20
624	t-Bu	(Me) ₂ N-	--	624.4	1.30
625	t-Bu	Ph	7-S(Me)	703.4	0.16
626	t-Bu	Ph	7-Br	737.3	0.24
627	t-Bu	Ph	7-F	675.3	0.33
628	t-Bu		7-N(Me) ₂	764.2	0.011
629	t-Bu		7-N(Me) ₂	764.3	0.02
630	t-Bu		7-N(Et) ₂	792.3	0.043

TABLE 7

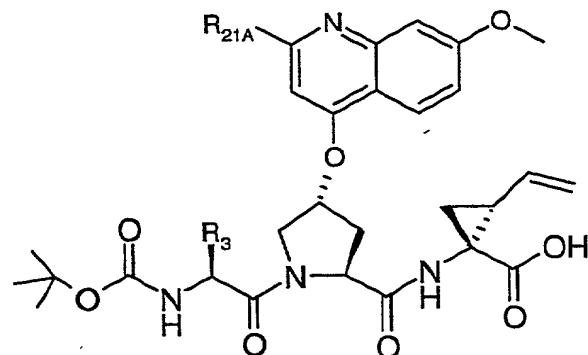


Table 7 Cpd #	R ₃	R _{21A}	MS	IC ₅₀ (μM)
701	t-Bu	Me-N [→] N= C=C	691.3	0.028
702	t-Bu	Ph-C=C [→]	713.4	0.10
703	t-Bu	Me-O-C [→]	655.3	0.047
704	t-Bu	C ₆ H ₄ -C ₆ H ₃ -N [→]	728.4	0.24
705	t-Bu	O-C ₆ H ₁₁ -N [→]	696.4	0.13
706	t-Bu	S-C ₆ H ₃ -N [→]	693.3	0.032
707	t-Bu	S-C ₆ H ₃ -N [→]	694.3	0.023
708	t-Bu	Ph-N(Me)-C [→]	716.4	0.15
709	t-Bu	H ₂ N-C ₆ H ₃ -S-N [→]	709.2	0.021
710	t-Bu	HOOC-C [→]	655.3	0.685
711	t-Bu	Me-C ₆ H ₃ -S-N [→]	708.2	0.016
712	t-Bu	(Me) ₂ N-C [→]	654.3	0.10
713	t-Bu	C ₆ H ₃ -S-N [→]	692.3 (M-H) ⁻	0.026
714	t-Bu	Et-C ₆ H ₃ -S-N [→]	722.3	0.012

Table 7 Cpd #	R ₃	R _{21A}	MS	IC ₅₀ (μM)
715	t-Bu		688.3	0.031
716	t-Bu		688.3	0.079
717	t-Bu		723.3	0.028
718	t-Bu		626.3	0.16
719	t-Bu		751.2	0.018
720	t-Bu		733.4	0.03
721	t-Bu		724.1	0.045
722	t-Bu		737.3	0.048
723	t-Bu		751.4	0.047
724	t-Bu		708.4	0.075
725	t-Bu		689.4	0.046
726	t-Bu		653.3	0.25
727	t-Bu		688.3	0.07
728	t-Bu		786.1	0.022

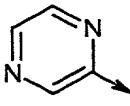
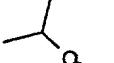
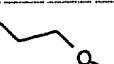
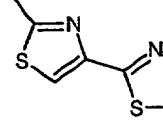
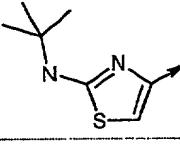
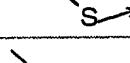
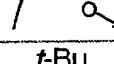
Table 7 Cpd #	R ₃	R _{21A}	MS	IC ₅₀ (μ M)
729	t-Bu		689.3	0.2
730	t-Bu		669.2	0.042
731	t-Bu		669.2	0.031
732	t-Bu		791.0	0.02
733	t-Bu		765.3	0.028
734	t-Bu		671.3	0.044
735	t-Bu		683.3	0.058
736	t-Bu	t-Bu	667.4	0.25
737	t-Bu	CHex	693.4	0.11

TABLE 8

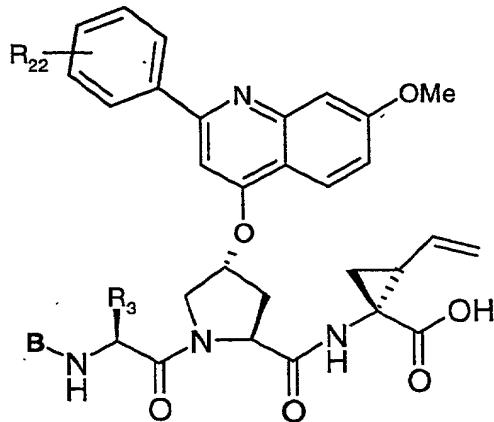


Table 8 Cpd #	B	R ₃	R ₂₂	MS	IC ₅₀ (μM)
801		t-Bu	--	686.7	0.006
802		t-Bu	--	727.7	0.024
803		t-Bu	--	685.7	0.12
804		t-Bu	--	711.7	0.032
805	Ac	t-Bu	--	629.6	0.083
806		t-Bu	--	725.7	0.036
807		t-Bu	--	672.4	0.01
808		t-Bu	--	712.4	0.008
809		i-Pr	--	649.3	0.071

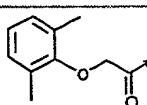
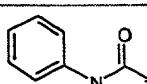
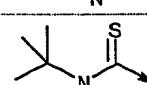
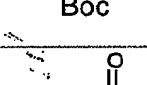
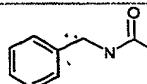
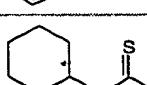
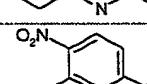
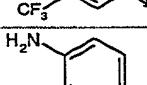
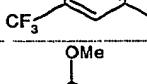
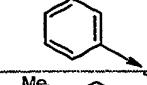
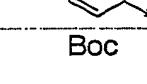
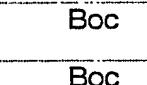
Table 8 Cpd #	B	R ₃	R ₂₂	MS	IC ₅₀ (μM)
810		t-Bu	--	749.3	0.45
811	Boc	t-Bu	4-Cl	721.3	0.04
812		t-Bu	--	706.2	0.013
813		t-Bu	--	702.2	0.02
814	Boc	t-Bu	2-Cl	721.3	0.13
815	Boc	t-Bu	3-Cl	721.3	0.16
816		t-Bu	--	658.3	0.032
817		t-Bu	--	720.2	0.017
818		t-Bu	--	728.3	0.019
819		i-Pr	--	762.3	0.32
820		i-Pr	--	732.2	0.063
821		i-Pr	--	679.1	0.12
822		i-Pr	--	663.3	0.05
823	Boc	t-Bu	2-OMe	717.2	0.107
824	Boc	t-Bu	3-OMe	719.2	0.07
825	Boc	t-Bu	4-OMe	719.2	0.024
826		i-Pr	--	663.3	0.78
827		t-Bu	--	673.2	0.27
828		i-Pr	--	691.3	0.10

Table 8 Cpd #	B	R ₃	R ₂₂	MS	IC ₅₀ (μM)
829		t-Bu	--	734.3	0.057
830		t-Bu	--	645.3	0.111
831		t-Bu	--	701.3	0.015
832		t-Bu	--	801.3	0.11
833		t-Bu	--	715.2	0.015
834		i-Pr	--	663.3	0.074
835		t-Bu	--	702.5	0.007
836		i-Pr	--	694.4	0.13
837		i-Pr	--	683.3	0.098
838		i-Pr	--	679.1	0.094
839		i-Pr	--	674.5	0.10
840		i-Pr	--	667.4	0.085
841	Boc	t-Bu	2-Me	701.5	0.24
842	Boc	t-Bu	3-Me	701.5	0.073
843	Boc	t-Bu	4-Me	701.5	0.053
844		t-Bu	4-OMe	716.6	0.006

Table 8 Cpd #	B	R ₃	R ₂₂	MS	IC ₅₀ (μ M)
845		i-Pr	--	706.9	0.18
846		i-Pr	--	693.4	0.104
847	Boc	cHex	--	713.4	0.037
848	Boc		--	687.5	0.093
849	Boc		--	701.5	0.110
850	Boc		--	731.5	0.063
851	Boc		--	689.5	0.12
852	Boc		--	689.5	0.05
853	Boc		--	765.5	0.17
854		i-Pr	--	723.4 (M-H) ⁺	0.37
855		i-Pr	--	693.3	0.075
856		i-Pr	--	688.3	0.11
857		t-Bu	--	716.4	0.011
858		t-Bu	--	700.4	0.205
859		i-Pr	--	655.4	0.83

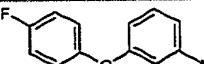
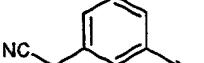
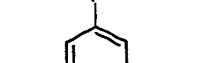
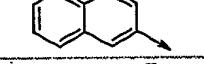
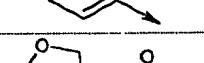
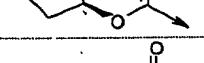
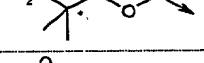
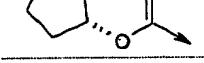
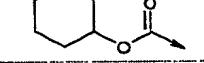
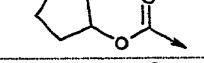
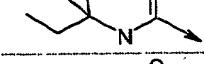
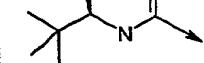
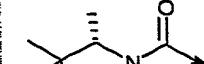
Table 8 Cpd #	B	R ₃	R ₂₂	MS	IC ₅₀ (μM)
860		i-Pr	--	759.3	0.24
861		i-Pr	--	688.3	0.17
862		i-Pr	--	685.3	0.23
863		i-Pr	--	699.4	0.30
864		i-Pr	--	667.3	0.45
865		t-Bu	--	701.4	0.02
866		t-Bu	--	702.4	0.20
867		t-Bu	--	701.3	0.051
868		t-Bu	--	713.3	0.03
869		t-Bu	--	699.4	0.014
870		t-Bu	--	700.4	0.009
871		t-Bu	--	714.3	0.011
872		t-Bu	--	714.4	0.005
873		t-Bu	--	714.3	0.019

TABLE 9

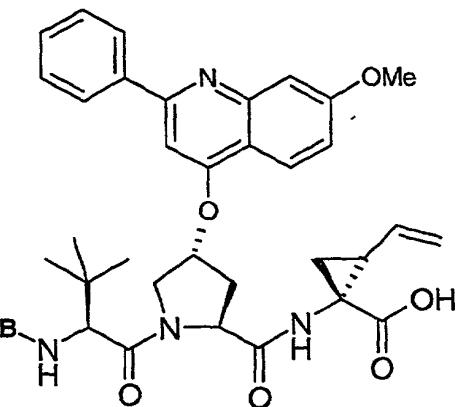


Table 9 Cpd #	B	MS	IC_{50} (μ M)
901	Boc	685.3	0.025
902		825.4	0.042
903		769.3	0.005
904		707.3	0.095
905		685.2	0.029
906		728.2	0.014
907		717.2	0.025
908		691.2	0.072

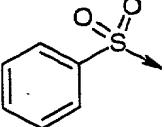
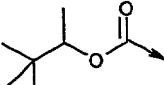
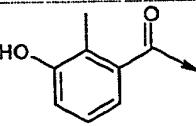
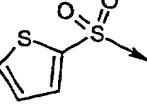
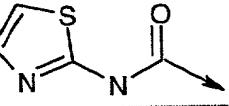
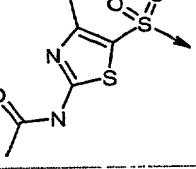
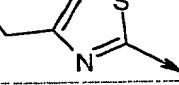
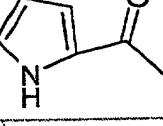
Table 9 Cpd #	B	MS	IC ₅₀ (μM)
909		727.2	0.036
910		715.3	0.056
911		721.3	0.039
912		733.2	0.034
913		713.3	0.030
914		805.3	0.031
915		692.2	0.026
916		680.3	0.3

TABLE 10

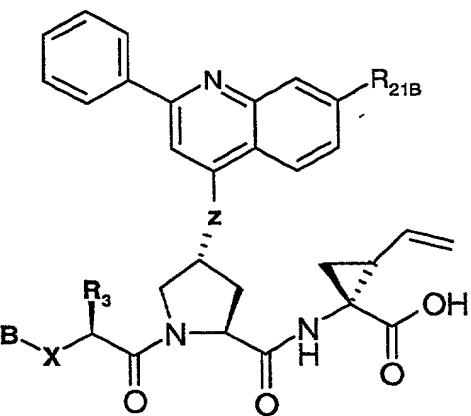
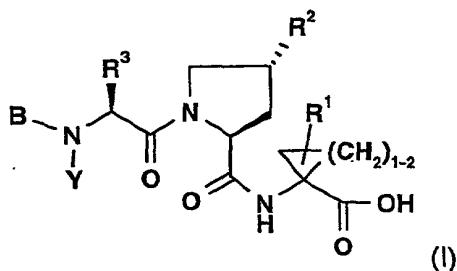


Table 10 Cpd #	B-X+	R ₃	Z	R _{21B}	MS	IC ₅₀ (μM)
1001	Ph-N(Me)-	i-Pr	O	H	663.3	0.31
1002	Boc-NH-	t-Bu	S	OMe	703.4	0.32
1003		i-Pr	O	---	663.3	0.31

CLAIMS

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. A compound of formula (I) comprising the scope of the invention are racemates, diastereoisomers and optical isomers of



wherein **B** is H, a C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl; Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, all of which optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; C₁₋₆ alkanoyl; hydroxy; hydroxyalkyl; halo; haloalkyl; nitro; cyano; cyanoalkyl; amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; amido; or (lower alkyl)amide; or **B** is an acyl derivative of formula R₄-C(O)-; a carboxyl of formula R₄-O-C(O)-; an amide of formula R₄-N(R₅)-C(O)-; a thioamide of formula R₄-N(R₅)-C(S)-; or a sulfonyl of formula R₄-SO₂ wherein

R₄ is (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido, or (lower alkyl) amide;

(ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkoxy, or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with hydroxy, carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido, or (lower alkyl) amide;

(iii) amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; amido; or (lower alkyl)amide;

(iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or

(v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl) amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;

R₅ is H or C₁₋₆ alkyl;

with the proviso that when R₄ is an amide or a thioamide, R₄ is not (ii) a cycloalkoxy; Y is H or C₁₋₆ alkyl;

R³ is C₁₋₈ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₁₋₆ thioalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl;

R₂ is CH₂-R₂₀, NH-R₂₀, O-R₂₀ or S-R₂₀, wherein R₂₀ is a saturated or unsaturated C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₄₋₁₀ (alkylcycloalkyl), all of which being optionally mono-, di- or tri-substituted with R₂₁,

or R₂₀ is a C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₄ aralkyl, all optionally mono-, di- or tri-substituted with R₂₁,

or R₂₀ is Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally mono-, di- or tri-substituted with R₂₁,

wherein each R₂₁ is independently C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; lower thioalkyl; sulfonyl; NO₂; OH; SH; halo; haloalkyl; amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₄ aralkyl, Het or (lower alkyl)-Het; amido optionally mono-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₄ aralkyl, Het or (lower alkyl)-Het; carboxyl; carboxy(lower alkyl); C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₄ aralkyl or Het, said aryl, aralkyl or Het being optionally substituted with R₂₂;

wherein R₂₂ is C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; sulfonyl; (lower alkyl)sulfonyl; NO₂; OH; SH; halo; haloalkyl; carboxyl; amide; (lower alkyl)amide; or Het optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;

R¹ is H; C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, C₂₋₆ alkenyl, or C₂₋₆ alkynyl, all optionally substituted with halogen;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or ester thereof.

2. A compound of formula I according to claim 1, wherein

B is a C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, nitro, cyano, cyanoalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or

B is Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, nitro, cyano, cyanoalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl.

3. A compound of formula I according to claim 1, wherein **B** is R₄-SO₂ wherein R₄ is C₁₋₆ alkyl; amido; (lower alkyl)amide; C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₄ aralkyl or Het, all optionally

substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl.

4. A compound of formula I according to claim 1, wherein **B** is an acyl derivative of formula R₄-C(O)- wherein R₄ is

- (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, hydroxy or C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;
- (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, both optionally substituted with hydroxy, carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;
- (iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;
- (v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl.

5. A compound of formula I according to claim 1, wherein **B** is a carboxyl of formula R₄-O-C(O)-, wherein R₄ is

- (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amide;
- (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amide;
- (iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or
- (v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amide.

6. A compound of formula I according to claim 1, wherein **B** is an amide of formula R₄-N(R₅)-C(O)- wherein R₄ is

- (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;

(ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;

(iii) amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₃ alkyl;

(iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or

(v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amide; and

R₅ is H or methyl.

7. A compound of formula I according to claim 1, wherein B is a thioamide of formula R₄-NH-C(S)-; wherein R₄ is

- (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl or C₁₋₆ alkoxy;
- (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amino or amido.

8. A compound of formula I according to claim 2, wherein B is a C₆ or C₁₀ aryl optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, nitro, cyano, cyanoalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl.

9. A compound of formula I according to claim 2, wherein r B is Het optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, halo, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl.

10. A compound of formula I according to claim 4, wherein B is an acyl derivative of formula R₄-C(O)-; wherein R₄ is

- (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, hydroxy or C₁₋₆ alkoxy; or
- (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, both optionally substituted with hydroxy, carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, or
- (iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, or (v) Het optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amido or amino.

11. A compound of formula I according to claim 5, wherein B is a carboxyl of formula R₄-O-C(O)-, wherein R₄ is

- (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, C₁₋₆

alkoxy or amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;

- (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, or
- (iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or
- (v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amido, or amino optionally mono-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl.

12. A compound of formula I according to claim 6, wherein **B** is an amide of formula R₄-N(R₅)-C(O)- wherein R₄ is

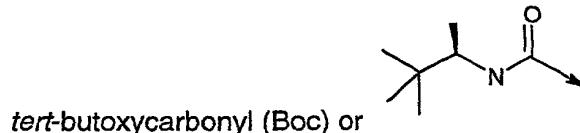
- (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;
- (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;
- (iii) amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₃ alkyl, or
- (iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino or amido optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or
- (v) Het optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino or amido, and R₅ is H.

13. A compound of formula I according to claim 7, wherein **B** is a thioamide of formula R₄-NH-C(S)-; wherein R₄ is (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl; or (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl.

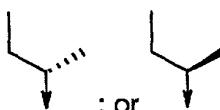
14. A compound of formula I according to claim 12, wherein **B** is an amide of formula R₄-NH-C(O)- wherein R₄ is

- (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;
- (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;
- (iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino or amido.

15. A compound of formula I according to claim 1, wherein B is



16. A compound of formula I according to claim 1, wherein Y is H or methyl.
17. A compound of formula I according to claim 16, wherein Y is H.
18. A compound of formula I according to claim 1, wherein R³ is C₁₋₈ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₁₋₆ thioalkyl, acetamido, C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl,.
19. A compound of formula I according to claim 18, wherein R³ is the side chain of *tert*-butylglycine (Tbg), Ile, Val, Chg or:



20. A compound of formula I according to claim 19, wherein R^3 is the side chain of Tbg, Chg or Val.

21. A compound of formula I according to claim 1, wherein R_2 is S- R_{20} or O- R_{20} wherein R_{20} is a C_6 or C_{10} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl, Het or - CH_2 -Het, all optionally mono-, di- or tri-substituted with R_{21} , wherein

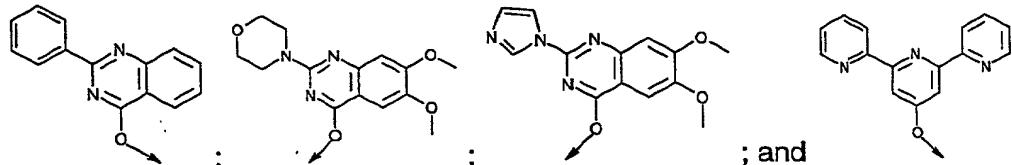
R₂₁ is C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; lower thioalkyl; amino or amido optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, Het or (lower alkyl)-Het; NO₂; OH; halo; trifluoromethyl; carboxyl; C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, or Het, said aryl, aralkyl or Het being optionally substituted with **R₂₂**, wherein

R₂₂ is C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; amino; mono- or di-(lower alkyl)amino; (lower alkyl)amide; sulfonylalkyl; NO₂; OH; halo; trifluoromethyl; carboxyl or Het.

22. A compound of formula I according to claim 21, wherein R_{21} is C_{1-6} alkyl; C_{1-6} alkoxy; amino; di(lower alkyl)amino; (lower alkyl)amide; C_6 or C_{10} aryl, or Het, said aryl or Het being optionally substituted with R_{22} , wherein R_{22} is C_{1-6} alkyl; C_{3-7} cycloalkyl; C_{1-6} alkoxy; amino; mono- or di(lower alkyl)amino; amido; (lower alkyl)amide; halo; trifluoromethyl or Het.
23. A compound of formula I according to claim 22, wherein R_{22} is C_{1-6} alkyl; C_{1-6} alkoxy; halo; amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with lower alkyl; amido; (lower alkyl)amide; or Het.

24. A compound of formula I according to claim 23, wherein R_{22} is methyl; ethyl; isopropyl; tert-butyl; methoxy; chloro; amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with lower alkyl; amido, (lower alkyl)amide; or (lower alkyl) 2-thiazole.

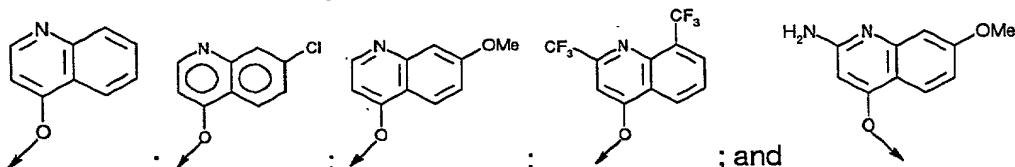
25. A compound of formula I according to claim 21, wherein R_2 is selected from the group consisting of:



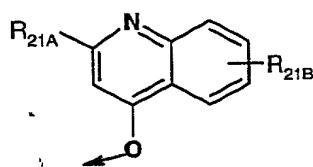
26. A compound of formula I according to claim 21, wherein R_2 is 1-naphthylmethoxy; 2-naphthylmethoxy; benzyloxy, 1-naphthyoxy; 2-naphthyloxy; or quinolinioxy unsubstituted, mono- or di-substituted with R_{21} as defined in claim 21.

27. A compound of formula I according to claim 26, wherein R_2 is 1-naphthylmethoxy; or quinolinioxy unsubstituted, mono- or di-substituted with R_{21} as defined in claim 26.

28. A compound of formula I according to claim 27, wherein R_2 is selected from the group consisting of:



29. A compound of formula I according to claim 26, wherein R_2 is :



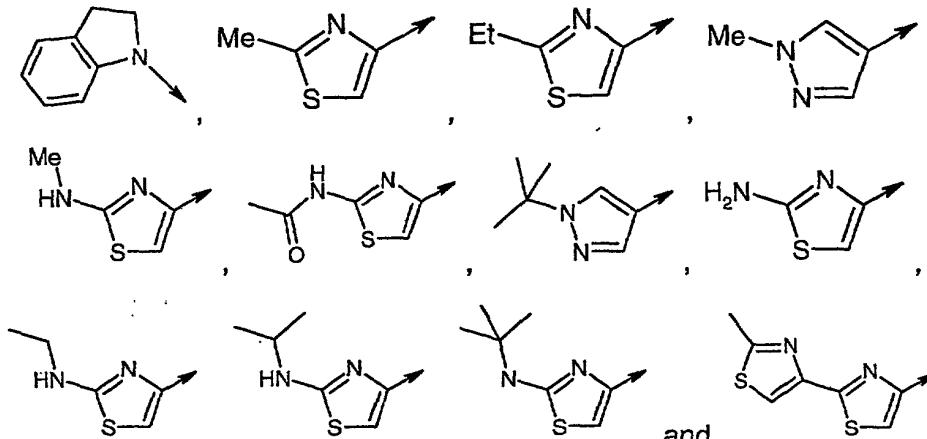
wherein R_{21A} is C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; lower thioalkyl; halo; amino optionally mono-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or C₆, C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, or Het, sais aryl, aralkyl or Het optionally substituted with R_{22} wherein R_{22} is C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, or Het; and

R_{21B} is C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, di(lower alkyl)amino, (lower alkyl)amide, NO₂, OH, halo, trifluoromethyl, or carboxyl.

30. A compound of formula I according to claim 29, wherein R_{21A} is C₆, C₁₀ aryl or Het, all optionally substituted with R_{22} as defined in claim 30.

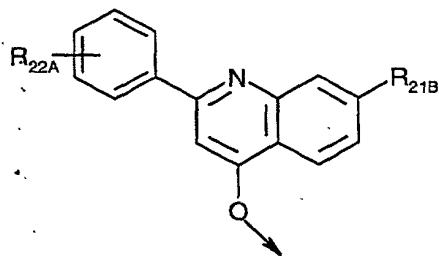
31. A compound of formula I according to claim 30, wherein R_{21A} is selected from the

group consisting of:



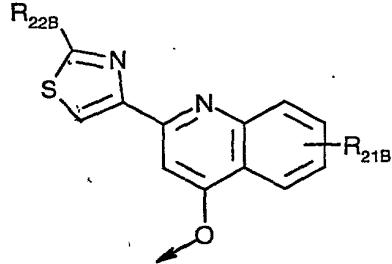
and

32. A compound of formula I according to claim 29, wherein \mathbf{R}_2 is:



wherein \mathbf{R}_{22A} is C_{1-6} alkyl; C_{1-6} alkoxy; or halo; and \mathbf{R}_{21B} is C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, amino, di(lower alkyl)amino, (lower alkyl)amide, NO_2 , OH , halo, trifluoromethyl, or carboxyl.

33. A compound of formula I according to claim 29, wherein \mathbf{R}_2 is:



wherein \mathbf{R}_{22B} is C_{1-6} alkyl, amino optionally mono-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, amido, or (lower alkyl)amide; ; and \mathbf{R}_{21B} is C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, amino, di(lower alkyl)amino, (lower alkyl)amide, NO_2 , OH , halo, trifluoromethyl, or carboxyl.

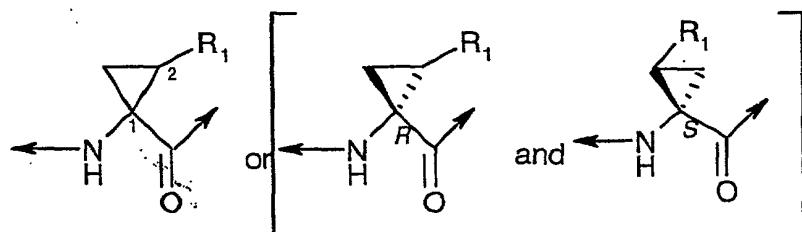
34. A compound of formula I according to claim 32 or 33, wherein \mathbf{R}_{21B} is C_{1-6} alkoxy, or di(lower alkyl)amino.

35. A compound of formula I according to claim 32 or 33, wherein \mathbf{R}_{21B} is methoxy.

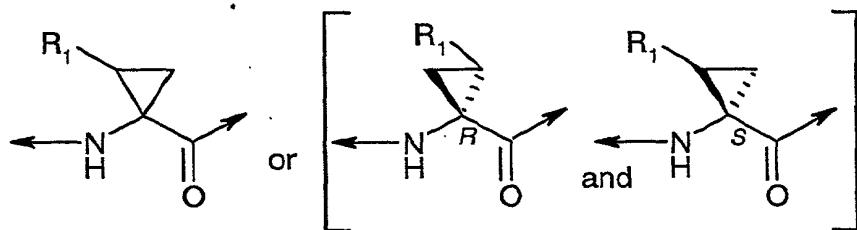
36. A compound of formula I according to claim 1, wherein $\mathbf{P}1$ is a cyclobutyl or

cyclopropyl ring, both optionally substituted with R_1 , wherein R^1 is H, C₁₋₃ alkyl, C₃₋₅ cycloalkyl, or C₂₋₄ alkenyl, all optionally substituted with halo.

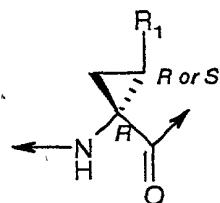
- 37. A compound of formula I according to claim 36, wherein P1 is cyclopropyl and R¹ is ethyl, vinyl, cyclopropyl, 1 or 2-bromoethyl or 1 or 2-bromovinyl.
- 38. A compound of formula I according to claim 37, wherein R¹ is vinyl.
- 39. A compound of formula I according to claim 37, wherein R¹ at carbon 2 is orientated *syn* to the carbonyl at position 1, represented by the radical:



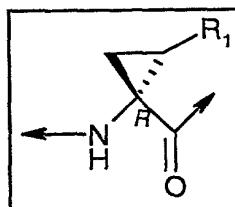
- 40. A compound of formula I according to claim 37, wherein R¹ at position 2 is orientated *anti* to the carbonyl at position 1, represented by the radical:



- 41. A compound of formula I according to claim 37, wherein carbon 1 has the R configuration:



- 42. An optical isomer of a compound of formula I according to claim 41, wherein said R¹ substituent and the carbonyl in a *syn* orientation in the following absolute configuration:



43. A compound of formula I according to claim 42, wherein R_1 is ethyl, hence the asymmetric carbon atoms at positions 1 and 2 have the *R,R* configuration.

44. A compound of formula I according to claim 42, wherein R_1 is vinyl, hence the asymmetric carbon atoms at positions 1 and 2 have the *R,S* configuration.

45. A compound of formula I according to claim 1, wherein

B is a C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-16} aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, nitro, cyano, cyanoalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; or
Het or (lower alkyl)-**Het**, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, nitro, cyano, cyanoalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, or
B is $R_4\text{-SO}_2$ wherein R_4 is preferably amido; (lower alkyl)amide; C_6 or C_{10} aryl, C_{7-14} aralkyl or **Het**, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, or
B is an acyl derivative of formula $R_4\text{-C(O)-}$ wherein R_4 is

- (i) C_{1-10} alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, hydroxy or C_{1-6} alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;
- (ii) C_{3-7} cycloalkyl or C_{4-10} alkylcycloalkyl, both optionally substituted with hydroxy, carboxyl, (C_{1-6} alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;
- (iv) C_6 or C_{10} aryl or C_{7-16} aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl;
- (v) **Het** or (lower alkyl)-**Het**, both optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, or

B is a carboxyl of formula $R_4\text{-O-C(O)-}$, wherein R_4 is

- (i) C_{1-10} alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C_{1-6} alkanoyl, hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkoxy, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amide;

- (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amide;
- (iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or
- (v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amido, or

B is an amide of formula R₄-N(R₅)-C(O)- wherein R₄ is

- (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;
- (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;
- (iii) amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₃ alkyl;
- (iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or
- (v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, amido or (lower alkyl)amide; and

R₅ is H or methyl, or

B is thioamide of formula R₄-NH-C(S)-; wherein R₄ is

- (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl or C₁₋₆ alkoxy;
- (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amino or amido;

Y is H or methyl;

R³ is C₁₋₈ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₁₋₆ thioalkyl, acetamido, C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl;

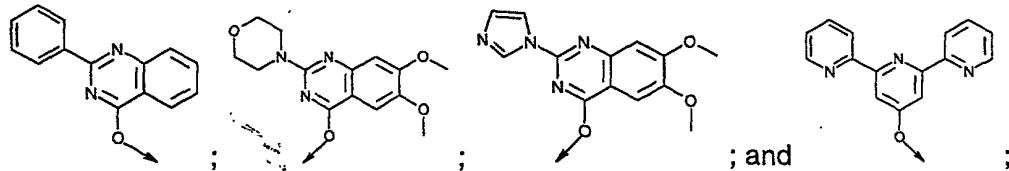
R₂ is S-R₂₀ or O-R₂₀ wherein R₂₀ is preferably a C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, Het or -CH₂-Het, all optionally mono-, di- or tri-substituted with R₂₁, wherein

R₂₁ is C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; lower thioalkyl; amino or amido optionally mono-

or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, Het or (lower alkyl)-Het; NO₂; OH; halo; trifluoromethyl; carboxyl; C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, or Het, said aryl, aralkyl or Het being optionally substituted with R₂₂, wherein

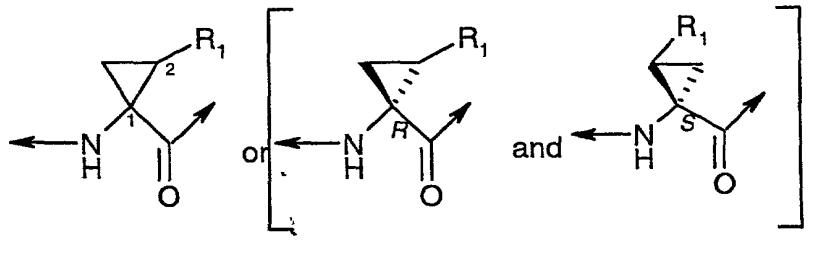
R₂₂ is C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; amino; mono- or di-(lower alkyl)amino; (lower alkyl)amide; sulfonylalkyl; NO₂; OH; halo; trifluoromethyl; carboxyl or Het; or

R₂ is selected from the group consisting of:



or R₂ is 1-naphthylmethoxy; 2-naphthylmethoxy; benzyloxy, 1-naphthyoxy; 2-naphthyoxy; or quinolinoxy unsubstituted, mono- or di-substituted with R₂₁ as defined above; and

the P1 segment is a cyclopropyl ring, both optionally substituted with R₁, wherein R₁ is C₁₋₃ alkyl, C₃₋₅ cycloalkyl, or C₂₋₄ alkenyl optionally substituted with halo, and said R₁ at carbon 2 is orientated *syn* to the carbonyl at position 1, represented by the radical:



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or ester thereof.

46. A compound of formula I according to claim 45, wherein B is a C₆ or C₁₀ aryl optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, halo, haloalkyl, nitro, cyano, cyanoalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or B is Het optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, halo, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, or amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or B is R₄-SO₂ wherein R₄ is C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, a C₇₋₁₄ aralkyl or Het all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; amido, (lower alkyl)amide; B is an acyl derivative of

formula $R_4-C(O)-$ wherein R_4 is

- (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, hydroxy or C₁₋₆ alkoxy; or
- (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, both optionally substituted with hydroxy, carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl; or
- (iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy; or

or B is a carboxyl of formula $R_4-O-C(O)-$, wherein R_4 is

- (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy or amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;
- (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or
- (iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or
- (v) Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amido, or amino optionally mono-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;

or B is an amide of formula $R_4-N(R_5)-C(O)-$ wherein R_4 is

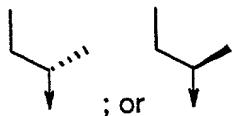
- (i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;
- (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; and R₅ is H or methyl; or
- R₄ is
 - (iii) amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₃ alkyl; or
 - (iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl, all optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino or amido optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or
 - (v) Het optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino or amido; or

B is a thioamide of formula $\text{R}_4\text{-NH-C(S)-}$; wherein R_4 is:

(i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl; or (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl; or

Y is H;

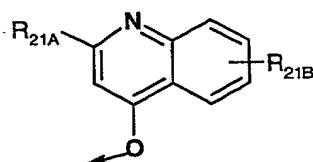
R^3 is the side chain of *tert*-butylglycine (Tbg), Ile, Val, Chg or:



R₂ is 1-naphthylmethoxy; or quinolinoxy unsubstituted, mono- or di-substituted with

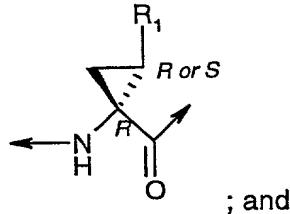
R₂₁ as defined above, or

R₂ is :



wherein **R_{21A}** is C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; C₆, C₁₀ aryl or Het; lower thioalkyl; halo; amino optionally mono-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; or C₆, C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl or Het, optionally substituted with **R₂₂** wherein **R₂₂** is C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, or Het;

P1 is a cyclopropyl ring wherein carbon 1 has the *R* configuration,



R¹ is ethyl, vinyl, cyclopropyl, 1 or 2-bromoethyl or 1 or 2-bromovinyl.

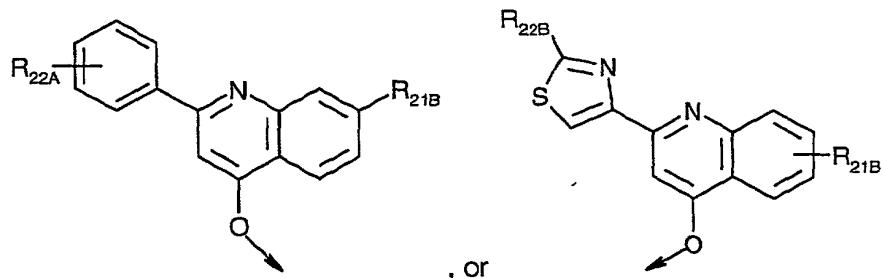
47. A compound of formula I according to claim 46, wherein

B is an amide of formula **R₄-NH-C(O)-** wherein **R₄** is

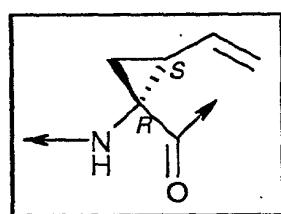
- i) C₁₋₁₀ alkyl optionally substituted with carboxyl, C₁₋₆ alkanoyl, hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;
- (ii) C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with carboxyl, (C₁₋₆ alkoxy)carbonyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl;
- (iv) C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl, hydroxy, amino or amido;

R³ is the side chain of Tbg, Chg or Val;

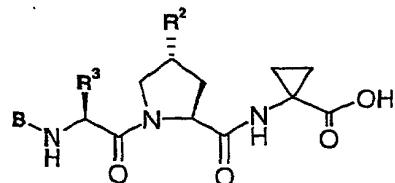
R₂ is:



wherein R_{22A} is C_{1-6} alkyl (such as methyl); C_{1-6} alkoxy (such as methoxy); or halo (such as chloro); R_{22B} is C_{1-6} alkyl, amino optionally mono-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, amido, or (lower alkyl)amide; and R_{21B} is C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, amino, di(lower alkyl)amino, (lower alkyl)amide, NO_2 , OH , halo, trifluoromethyl, or carboxyl; and $P1$ is:



48. A compound according to claim 45 represented by the formula:



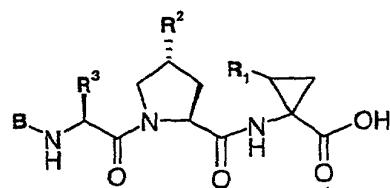
wherein B , R_3 , R_2 are as defined below:

Tab 1 Cpd#	B	R_3	R_2
101	Boc	cHex	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl
102		cHex	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl
103		cHex	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl

Tab 1 Cpd#	B	R ₃	R ₂
104		cHex	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl
105		cHex	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl
106	Boc	cHex	
107		cHex	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl
108	Boc	iPr	
109	acetyl	cHex	
110	Boc	i-Pr	
and 111	Boc	t-Bu	

49. Compound # 111 according to claim 48.

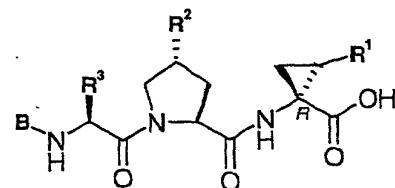
50. A compound according to claim 45 represented by the formula:



wherein **B**, **R₃**, **R₂**, **R₁** are as defined below:

Table 2 Cpd #	B	R₃	R₂	R₁ anti to carboxy
201	Boc	cyclohexyl	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	ethyl (one isomer)
202	Boc	cyclohexyl	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	ethyl (other isomer)
and 203	Boc	t-Bu		vinyl 1 <i>R</i> , 2 <i>R</i>

51. Compound #203 according to claim 49.
 52. A compound according to claim 45 represented by the formula:



wherein **B**, **R₃**, **R₂** and **R₁** are as defined below:

Table 3 Cpd #	B	R₃	R₂	R₁ syn to carboxyl
301	Boc	cHex	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	ethyl
302		iPr	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	ethyl
303		cHex	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	ethyl
304	Boc	cHex		ethyl
305	Boc	cHex	-O-CH ₂ -1-naphthyl	vinyl

0002533968 - 0002533969

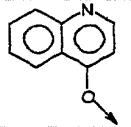
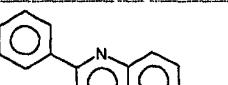
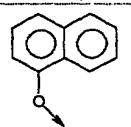
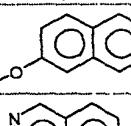
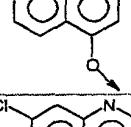
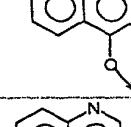
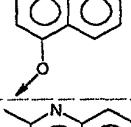
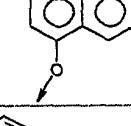
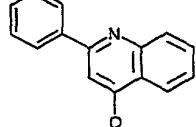
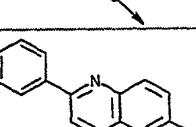
Table 3 Cpd #	B	R ₃	R ₂	R ₁ syn to carboxyl
306	Boc	cHex		vinyl ;
307	Boc	cHex		vinyl ;
308	Boc	cHex		vinyl ;
309	Boc	cHex		vinyl ;
310	Boc	cHex		vinyl ;
311	Boc	cHex		vinyl ;
312	Boc	cHex		vinyl ;
313	Boc	cHex		vinyl ;
314	Boc	cHex		vinyl ;
315	Boc	cHex		vinyl ;

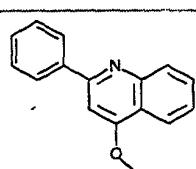
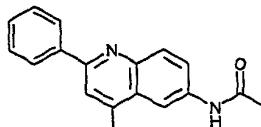
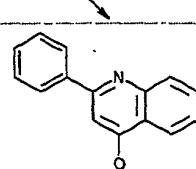
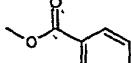
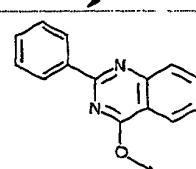
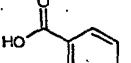
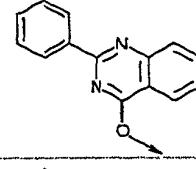
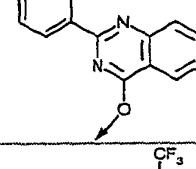
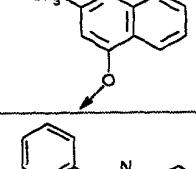
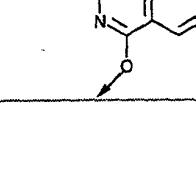
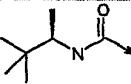
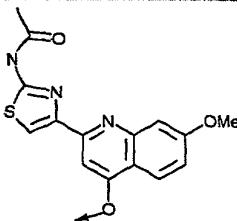
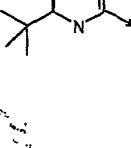
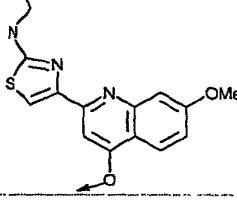
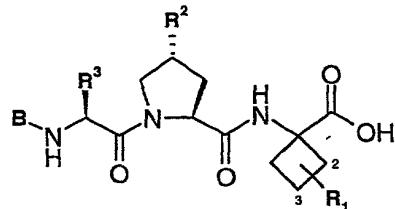
Table 3 Cpd #	B	R ₃	R ₂	R ₁ syn to carboxyl
316	Acetyl	cHex		vinyl
317	Boc	cHex		vinyl
318	CF ₃ -C(O)-	i-Pr		vinyl
319		cHex		vinyl
320		cHex		vinyl
321	Boc	t-Bu		vinyl
322	Boc	t-Bu		vinyl
323	Boc	t-Bu		

Table 3 Cpd #	B	R ₃	R ₂	R ₁ <i>syn to</i> <i>carboxyl</i>
324	Boc	t-Bu		vinyl ;
325	Boc	t-Bu		
326	Boc	t-Bu		vinyl ;
327		t-Bu		vinyl ;
328	Boc	t-Bu		vinyl ;
329	Boc	t-Bu		vinyl ;
330	Boc	t-Bu		vinyl ;
331		t-Bu		vinyl ;
332	Boc	t-Bu		ethyl ;

Table 3 Cpd #	B	R ₃	R ₂	R ₁ <i>syn to</i> <i>carboxyl</i>
333		t-Bu		vinyl
and 334		t-Bu		vinyl

53. A compound according to claim 52, selected from the group consisting of compound #: 307, 314, 317, 319, 321, 324, 325, 326, 327, 329, 331, 332, 333, and 334.

54. A compound according to claim 45 represented by the formula:

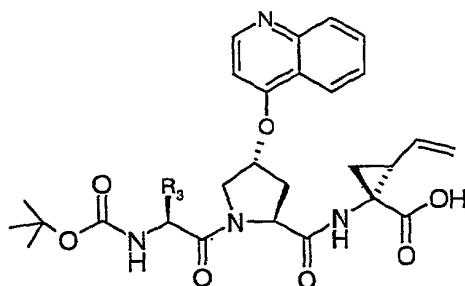


wherein B, R₃, R₂ and R₁ are as defined below:

Table 4 Cpd #	B	R ₃	R ₂	R ₁
401	Boc	i-Pr		H
402	Boc	t-Bu		H
403	Boc	t-Bu		H
404	Boc	t-Bu		3-(=CH ₂)
405	Boc	t-Bu		2-vinyl
and 406	Boc	t-Bu		2-Et

55. A compound according to claim 54, selected from the group consisting of compound #: 403, 405, and 406.

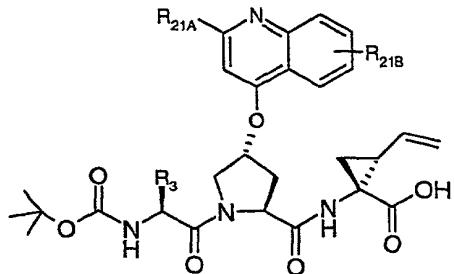
56. A compound according to claim 45 represented by the formula:



wherein R_3 is as defined below:

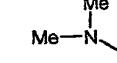
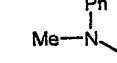
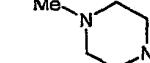
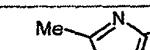
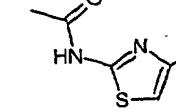
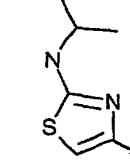
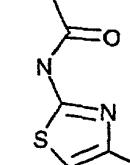
Table 5 Cpd #	R_3	Table 5 Cpd #	R_3
501	$t\text{-Bu}$	507	
502	H	508	
503		509	
504		510	
505		and 511	
506			

57. A compound according to claim 56, selected from the group consisting of compound #: 501, 509, and 510.
58. A compound according to claim 46 represented by the formula:



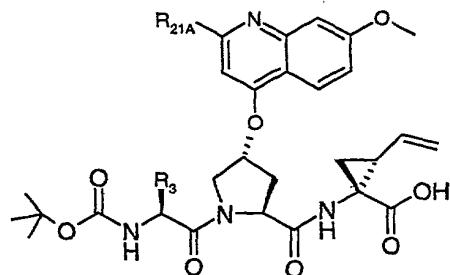
wherein R_3 , R_{21A} and R_{21B} are as defined below:

Table 6 Cpd #	R_3	R_{21A}	R_{21B}
601	<i>i</i> -Pr	Ph	7-OMe
602	<i>t</i> -Bu	Ph	8-OMe, 7-OMe
603	<i>i</i> -Pr	Ph	7-ethyl
604	<i>t</i> -Bu	--	7-OMe
605	<i>t</i> -Bu	Ph	7-O- <i>i</i> Pr
606	<i>t</i> -Bu	--	7-Cl
607	<i>i</i> Pr	--	7-Cl
608	CH ₂ - <i>i</i> Pr	--	7-Cl
609	<i>t</i> -Bu		--
610	<i>t</i> -Bu	Cl	--
611	<i>t</i> -Bu	Ph	7-N(Me) ₂
612	<i>t</i> -Bu		--
613	<i>t</i> -Bu		--
614	<i>t</i> -Bu		--
615	<i>t</i> -Bu	--	7-N(Me) ₂
616	<i>t</i> -Bu		--
617	<i>t</i> -Bu		--

Table 6 Cpd #	R ₃	R _{21A}	R _{21B}
618	t-Bu		--
619	t-Bu		--
620	t-Bu		--
621	t-Bu		--
622	t-Bu		--
623	t-Bu	MeO-	--
624	t-Bu	(Me) ₂ N-	--
625	t-Bu	Ph	7-S(Me)
626	t-Bu	Ph	7-Br
627	t-Bu	Ph	7-F
628	t-Bu		7-N(Me) ₂
629	t-Bu		7-N(Me) ₂
and 630	t-Bu		7-N(Et) ₂

59. A compound according to claim 58, selected from the group consisting of compound #: 601, 602, 603, 604, 605, 606, 607, 610, 611, 612, 615, 616, 617, 620, 621, 622, 625, 626, 627, 628, 629, and 630.

60. A compound according to claim 46 represented by the formula:



wherein R_3 and R_{21A} are as defined below:

Table 7 Cpd #	R_3	R_{21A}
701	t-Bu	
702	t-Bu	
703	t-Bu	
704	t-Bu	
705	t-Bu	
706	t-Bu	
707	t-Bu	
708	t-Bu	
709	t-Bu	
710	t-Bu	HOOC-
711	t-Bu	
712	t-Bu	
713	t-Bu	
714	t-Bu	
715	t-Bu	

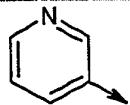
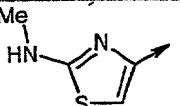
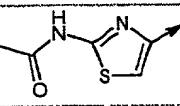
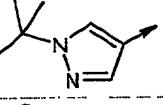
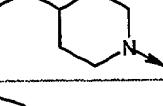
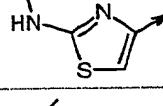
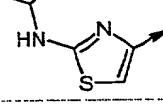
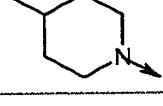
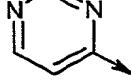
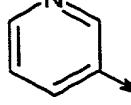
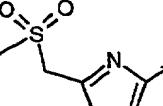
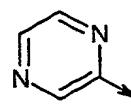
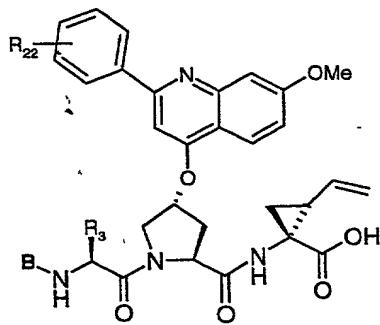
Table 7 Cpd #	R ₃	R _{21A}
716	t-Bu	
717	t-Bu	
718	t-Bu	NH ₂
719	t-Bu	
720	t-Bu	
721	t-Bu	
722	t-Bu	
723	t-Bu	
724	t-Bu	
725	t-Bu	
726	t-Bu	i-Pr
727	t-Bu	
728	t-Bu	
729	t-Bu	

Table 7 Cpd #	R ₃	R _{21A}
730	t-Bu	
731	t-Bu	
732	t-Bu	
733	t-Bu	
734	t-Bu	
735	t-Bu	
736	t-Bu	t-Bu
and 737	t-Bu	CHex

61. A compound according to claim 60, selected from the group consisting of compound #: **701, 702, 703, 704, 705, 706, 707, 708, 709, and 711 to 737.**

62. A compound according to claim 45 represented by the formula:



wherein **B**, **R₃**, and **R₂₂** are as defined below:

Table 8 Cpd #	B	R ₃	R ₂₂
801		t-Bu	--

Table 8 Cpd #	B	R ₃	R ₂₂
802		t-Bu	--
803		t-Bu	--
804		t-Bu	--
805	Ac	t-Bu	--
806		t-Bu	--
807		t-Bu	--
808		t-Bu	--
809		i-Pr	--
810		t-Bu	--
811	Boc	t-Bu	4-Cl
812		t-Bu	--
813		t-Bu	--
814	Boc	t-Bu	2-Cl
815	Boc	t-Bu	3-Cl
816		t-Bu	--
817		t-Bu	--

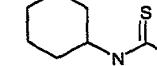
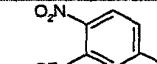
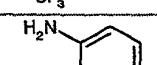
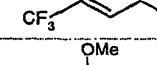
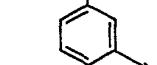
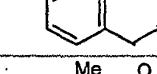
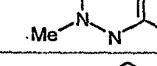
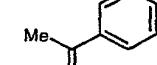
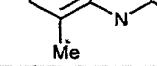
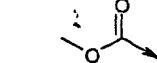
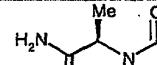
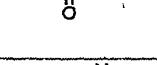
Table 8 Cpd #	B	R ₃	R ₂₂
818		t-Bu	--
819		i-Pr	--
820		i-Pr	--
821		i-Pr	--
822		i-Pr	--
823	Boc	t-Bu	2-OMe
824	Boc	t-Bu	3-OMe
825	Boc	t-Bu	4-OMe
826		i-Pr	--
827		t-Bu	--
828		i-Pr	--
829		t-Bu	--
830		t-Bu	--
831		t-Bu	--
832		t-Bu	--
833		t-Bu	--
834		i-Pr	--

Table 8 Cpd #	B	R ₃	R ₂₂
835		t-Bu	--
836		i-Pr	--
837		i-Pr	--
838		i-Pr	--
839		i-Pr	--
840		i-Pr	--
841	Boc	t-Bu	2-Me
842	Boc	t-Bu	3-Me
843	Boc	t-Bu	4-Me
844		t-Bu	4-OMe
845		i-Pr	--
846		i-Pr	--
847	Boc	cHex	--
848	Boc		--
849	Boc		--
850	Boc		--

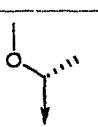
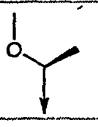
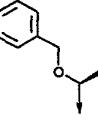
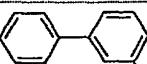
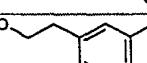
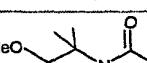
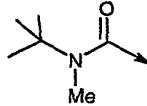
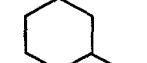
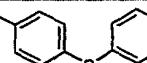
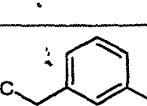
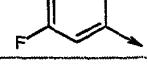
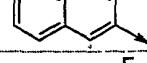
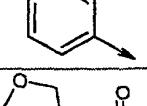
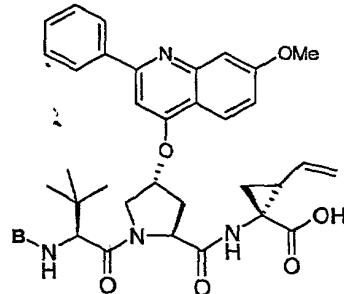
Table 8 Cpd #	B	R ₃	R ₂₂
851	Boc		--
852	Boc		--
853	Boc		--
854		i-Pr	--
855		i-Pr	--
856		i-Pr	--
857		t-Bu	--
858		t-Bu	--
859		i-Pr	--
860		i-Pr	--
861		i-Pr	--
862		i-Pr	--
863		i-Pr	--
864		i-Pr	--
865		t-Bu	--

Table 8 Cpd #	B	R ₃	R ₂₂
866		t-Bu	--
867		t-Bu	--
868		t-Bu	--
869		t-Bu	--
870		t-Bu	--
871		t-Bu	--
872		t-Bu	--
and 873		t-Bu	--

63. A compound according to claim 62, selected from the group consisting of compound #: **801 to 825, 827 to 858, and 860 to 873.**

64. A compound according to claim 45 represented by the formula:



wherein **B** is as defined below:

Table 9 Cpd #	B
901	Boc

Table 9
Cpd #

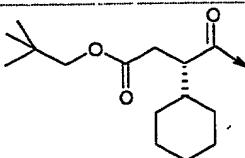
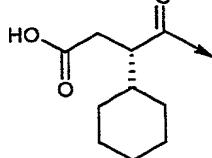
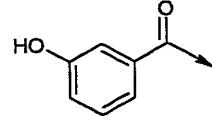
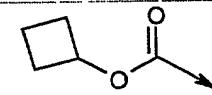
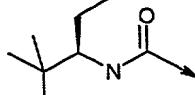
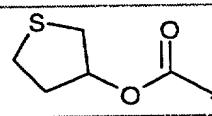
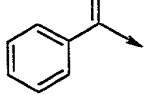
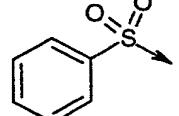
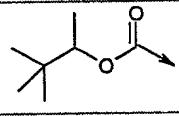
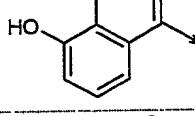
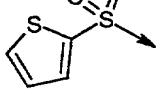
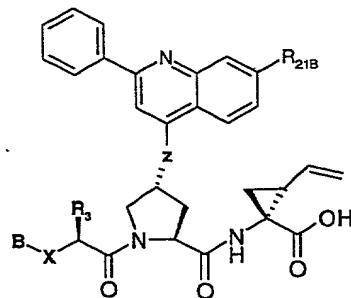
	B		
902		;	;
903		;	;
904		;	;
905		;	;
906		;	;
907		;	;
908		;	;
909		;	;
910		;	;
911		;	;
912		;	;

Table 9 B	
Cpd #	
913	
914	
915	
and 916	

65. A compound according to claim 45 represented by the formula:



wherein B, X, R₃, z and R_{21B} are as defined below:

Table 10 Cpd #	B-X-	R ₃	Z	R _{21B}
1001	Ph-N(Me)-	i-Pr	O	H;
1002	Boc-NH-	t-Bu	S	OMe;
and 1003		i-Pr	O	---

66. A pharmaceutical composition comprising an anti-hepatitis C virally effective amount of a compound of formula I according to claim 1, or a therapeutically acceptable salt or ester thereof, in admixture with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier medium or auxiliary agent.

67. A method of treating a hepatitis C viral infection in a mammal by administering to the mammal an anti-hepatitis C virally effective amount of the compound of formula I according to claim 1, or a therapeutically acceptable salt or ester thereof.

68. A method of treating a hepatitis C viral infection in a mammal by administering to the mammal an anti-hepatitis C virally effective amount of the composition according to claim 67.

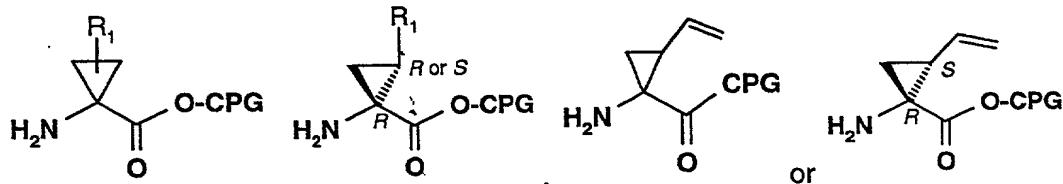
69. A method of inhibiting the replication of hepatitis C virus by exposing the virus to a hepatitis C viral NS3 protease inhibiting amount of the compound of formula I according to claim 1, or a therapeutically acceptable salt or ester thereof.

70. A method of treating a hepatitis C viral infection in a mammal by administering thereto an anti-hepatitis C virally effective amount of a combination of the compound of formula I according to claim 1, or a therapeutically acceptable salt or ester thereof with another anti-HCV agent.

71. A method according to claim 70, wherein said other anti-HCV agent is selected from the group consisting of: α - or β -interferon, ribavirin and amantadine.

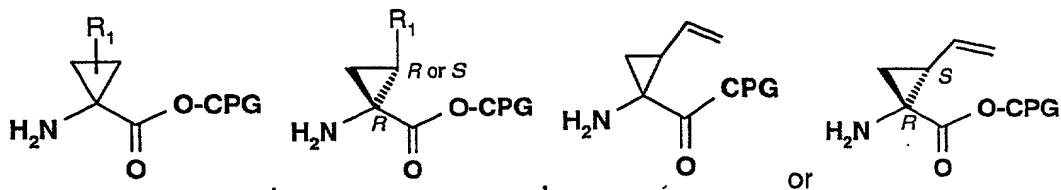
72. A method according to claim 70, wherein said other anti-HCV agent comprises an inhibitor of other targets in the HCV life cycle, selected from: helicase, polymerase, metalloprotease or IRES.

73. A process for the preparation of a peptide analog of formula (I) wherein P1 is a substituted aminocyclopropyl carboxylic acid residue, comprising the step of: coupling a peptide selected from the group consisting of: APG-P3-P2; or APG-P2; with a P1 intermediate of formula:



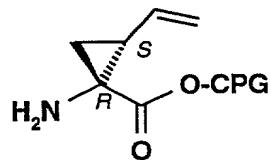
wherein R_1 is C_{1-6} alkyl, cycloalkyl or C_{2-6} alkenyl, all optionally substituted with halogen, CPG is a carboxyl protecting group and APG is an amino protecting group and P3 and P2 are as defined above.

74. A process for the preparation of: 1) a serine protease inhibitor peptide analog, or 2) a HCV NS3 protease inhibitor peptide analog, this process comprising the step of: coupling a (suitably protected) amino acid, peptide or peptide fragment with a P1 intermediate of formula:



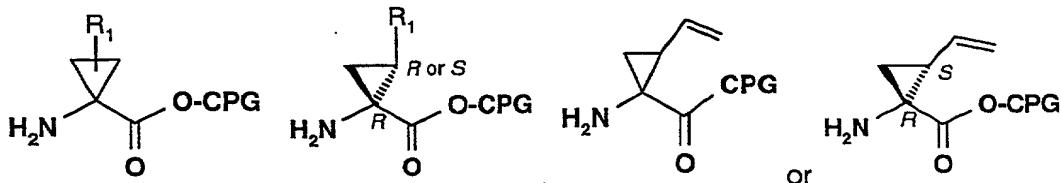
wherein R_1 is C_{1-6} alkyl, cycloalkyl or C_{2-6} alkenyl, all optionally substituted with halogen, and CPG is a carboxyl protecting group.

75. A process for the preparation of: 1) a protease inhibitor peptide analog, or 2) a serine protease inhibitor peptide analog, this process comprising the step of: coupling a (suitably protected) amino acid, peptide or peptide fragment with an intermediate of formula:



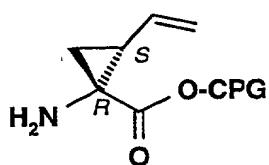
wherein CPG is a carboxyl protecting group.

76. Use of a P1 intermediate of formula:



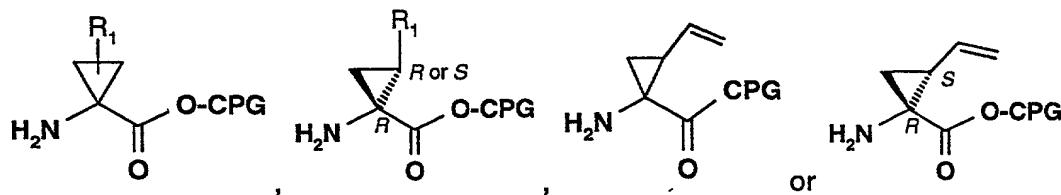
wherein R_1 is C_{1-6} alkyl, cycloalkyl or C_{2-6} alkenyl, all optionally substituted with halogen and CPG is a carboxyl protecting group, for the preparation of: 1) a serine protease inhibitor peptide analog, or 2) a HCV NS3 protease inhibitor peptide analog.

77. Use of an intermediate of formula:



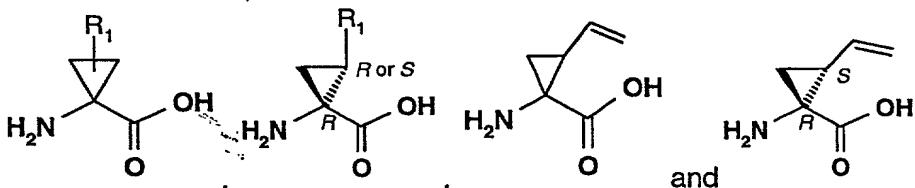
wherein CPG is a carboxyl protecting group, for the preparation of: 1) a protease inhibitor peptide analog, or 2) a serine protease inhibitor peptide analog.

78. Use of a P1 intermediate of formula:



wherein R_1 is C_{1-6} alkyl, cycloalkyl or C_{2-6} alkenyl, all optionally substituted with halogen and CPG is a carboxyl protecting group, for the preparation of a compound of formula I as defined above.

79. An amino acid analog compound selected from the group consisting of:

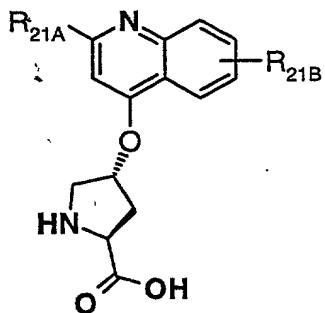


80. The process according to claim 73, 74 or 75 wherein said carboxyl protecting group (CPG) is selected from the group consisting of:
alkyl esters, aralkyl esters, and esters being cleavable by mild base treatment or mild reductive means.

81. A process for the resolution of enantiomers from a mixture of ($1R,2S)/(1S,2S$)-1-amino-2-vinylcyclopropyl carboxylic acid methyl ester, comprising the step of treating said mixture with an esterase to obtain the corresponding ($1R,2S$) enantiomer.

82. A process according to claim 81, wherein said esterase is Alcalase®.

83. Use of a proline analog of formula:



wherein R_{21A} is C_{1-6} alkyl; C_{1-6} alkoxy; lower thioalkyl; halo; amino optionally mono-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl; C_6 , C_{10} aryl, C_{7-16} aralkyl or Het, said aryl, aralkyl or Het optionally substituted with R_{22} wherein R_{22} is C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy, amido, (lower alkyl)amide, amino optionally mono- or di-substituted with C_{1-6} alkyl, or Het; and

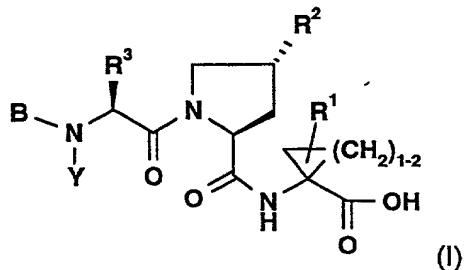
R_{21B} is C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, di(lower alkyl)amino, (lower alkyl)amide, NO₂, OH, halo, trifluoromethyl, or carboxyl;

for the synthesis of 1) a serine protease inhibitor peptide analog, 2) a HCV NS3 protease inhibitor peptide analog, or 3) a peptide analog of formula I.

84. Use of an anti-hepatitis C virally effective amount of the compound of formula I according to claim 1, or a therapeutically acceptable salt or ester thereof for the preparation of a composition for treating a hepatitis C viral infection in a mammal.
85. Use of a hepatitis C viral NS3 protease inhibiting amount of the compound of formula I according to claim 1, or a therapeutically acceptable salt or ester thereof for the preparation of a composition for inhibiting the replication of hepatitis C virus.
86. Use of an anti-hepatitis C virally effective amount of a combination of the compound of formula I according to claim 1, or a therapeutically acceptable salt or ester thereof, and an interferon for the preparation of a composition for treating a hepatitis C viral infection in a mammal.

ABSTRACT

Racemates, diastereoisomers and optical isomers of a compound of formula (I):



wherein **B** is H, a C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl; Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, all of which

5 optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; C₁₋₆ alkoxy; C₁₋₆ alkanoyl; hydroxy; hydroxyalkyl; halo; haloalkyl; nitro; cyano; cyanoalkyl; amino optionally substituted with C₁₋₆ alkyl; amido; or (lower alkyl)amide; or

B is an acyl derivative of formula R₄-C(O)-; a carboxyl of formula R₄-O-C(O)-; an amide of formula R₄-N(R₅)-C(O)-; a thioamide of formula R₄-N(R₅)-C(S)-; or a

10 sulfonyl of formula R₄-SO₂; R₅ is H or C₁₋₆ alkyl; and

Y is H or C₁₋₆ alkyl;

R³ is C₁₋₈ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, or C₄₋₁₀ alkylcycloalkyl, all optionally substituted with hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₁₋₆ thioalkyl, amido, (lower alkyl)amido, C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, or C₇₋₁₆ aralkyl;

15 R₂ is CH₂-R₂₀, NH-R₂₀, O-R₂₀ or S-R₂₀, wherein R₂₀ is a saturated or unsaturated C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl or C₄₋₁₀ (alkylcycloalkyl), all of which being optionally mono-, di- or tri-substituted with R₂₁,

or R₂₀ is a C₆ or C₁₀ aryl or C₇₋₁₄ aralkyl optionally substituted, or R₂₀ is Het or (lower alkyl)-Het, both optionally substituted, Het or (lower alkyl)-Het; carboxyl;

20 carboxy(lower alkyl); C₆ or C₁₀ aryl, C₇₋₁₄ aralkyl or Het, said aryl, aralkyl or Het being optionally substituted; and

R¹ is H; C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₃₋₇ cycloalkyl, C₂₋₆ alkenyl, or C₂₋₆ alkynyl, all optionally substituted with halogen; or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or ester thereof.

Please type a plus sign (+) inside this box →

PTO/SB/01 (12-97)

Approved for use through 9/30/00. OMB 0651-0032

Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

**DECLARATION FOR UTILITY OR
DESIGN
PATENT APPLICATION
(37 CFR 1.63)**

Declaration Submitted with Initial Filing OR Declaration Submitted after Initial Filing (surcharge (37 CFR 1.16 (e)) required)

Attorney Docket Number	13/068
First Named Inventor	Llinas-Brunet, M. et al
COMPLETE IF KNOWN	
Application Number	09 / 368,866
Filing Date	08/05/99
Group Art Unit	1613.
Examiner Name	

As a below named Inventor, I hereby declare that:

My residence, post office address, and citizenship are as stated below next to my name.

I believe I am the original, first and sole inventor (if only one name is listed below) or an original, first and joint inventor (if plural names are listed below) of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought on the invention entitled:

Hepatitis C Inhibitor Tri-Peptides

the specification of which

(Title of the Invention)

is attached hereto

OR

was filed on (MM/DD/YYYY) **08/05/1999**

as United States Application Number or PCT International

Application Number **09/368,866** and was amended on (MM/DD/YYYY) (if applicable).

I hereby state that I have reviewed and understand the contents of the above identified specification, including the claims, as amended by any amendment specifically referred to above.

I acknowledge the duty to disclose information which is material to patentability as defined in 37 CFR 1.56.

I hereby claim foreign priority benefits under 35 U.S.C. 119(a)-(d) or 365(b) of any foreign application(s) for patent or inventor's certificate, or 365(a) of any PCT international application which designated at least one country other than the United States of America, listed below and have also identified below, by checking the box, any foreign application for patent or inventor's certificate, or of any PCT international application having a filing date before that of the application on which priority is claimed.

Prior Foreign Application Number(s)	Country	Foreign Filing Date (MM/DD/YYYY)	Priority Not Claimed	Certified Copy Attached?
			<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>

Additional foreign application numbers are listed on a supplemental priority data sheet PTO/SB/02B attached hereto.

I hereby claim the benefit under 35 U.S.C. 119(e) of any United States provisional application(s) listed below.

Application Number(s)	Filing Date (MM/DD/YYYY)	
60/095,931	08/10/1998	<input type="checkbox"/> Additional provisional application numbers are listed on a supplemental priority data sheet PTO/SB/02B attached hereto.
60/132,386	05/04/1999	

[Page 1 of 2]

Burden Hour Statement: This form is estimated to take 0.4 hours to complete. Time will vary depending upon the needs of the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you are required to complete this form should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20231. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, DC 20231.

COPY

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

DECLARATION — Utility or Design Patent Application

I hereby claim the benefit under 35 U.S.C. 120 of any United States application(s), or 365(c) of any PCT International application designating the United States of America, listed below and, insofar as the subject matter of each of the claims of this application is not disclosed in the prior United States or PCT International application in the manner provided by the first paragraph of 35 U.S.C. 112, I acknowledge the duty to disclose information which is material to patentability as defined in 37 CFR 1.56 which became available between the filing date of the prior application and the national or PCT International filing date of this application.

U.S. Parent Application or PCT Parent Number	Parent Filing Date (MM/DD/YYYY)	Parent Patent Number (if applicable)

Additional U.S. or PCT international application numbers are listed on a supplemental priority data sheet PTO/SB/02B attached hereto.
As a named inventor, I hereby appoint the following registered practitioner(s) to prosecute this application and to transact all business in the Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith: Customer Number Registered practitioner(s) name/registration number listed below Place Customer Number Bar Code Label here

Name	Registration Number	Name	Registration Number
Robert P. Raymond	25,089	Susan K. Pocchiarri	45,016
Alan R. Stempel	28,991	Philip I. Datlow	41,482
Mary-Ellen M. Devlin	27,928	Timothy X. Witkowski	40,232
Anthony P. Bottino	41,629	Louise G. Bernier	38,791

Additional registered practitioner(s) named on supplemental Registered Practitioner Information sheet PTO/SB/02C attached hereto.

Direct all correspondence to: Customer Number or Bar Code Label OR Correspondence address below

Name	Robert P. Raymond		
Address	Boehringer Ingelheim Corporation		
Address	900 Ridgebury Road, PO Box 368		
City	Ridgefield	State	CT
Country	USA	Telephone	ZIP
	203-798-9988	06877	Fax
	203-798-4408		

I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under 18 U.S.C. 1001 and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issued thereon.

Name of Sole or First Inventor:		<input type="checkbox"/> A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor					
Given Name (first and middle if any)			Family Name or Surname				
Montse		Llinas-Brunet					
Inventor's Signature				Date <input style="width: 50px; height: 15px; border: 1px solid black; margin-left: 10px;" type="text"/> May 24/02			
Residence: City	D.D.O.	State	Que.	Country			
Post Office Address	Canada						
Post Office Address							
City	D.D.O.	State	Que.	ZIP	H9B 3K6	Country	Canada

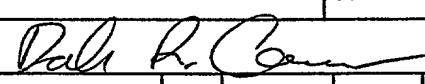
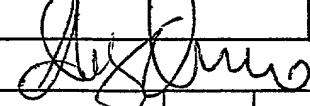
Additional inventors are being named on the 4 supplemental Additional Inventor(s) sheet(s) PTO/SB/02A attached hereto

Please type a plus sign (+) inside this box →

+

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

DECLARATION**ADDITIONAL INVENTOR(S)
Supplemental Sheet**Page 1 of 4

Name of Additional Joint Inventor, if any:		<input type="checkbox"/> A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor						
Given Name (first and middle [if any])				Family Name or Surname				
Murray D.		Bailey						
Inventor's Signature							Date	May 25/00
Residence: City	Pierrefonds	State	Que.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Country	Canada		Citizenship	CA
Post Office Address	344 Groulx							
Post Office Address								
City	Pierrefonds	State	Que.	ZIP	H8Y 1B3	Country	Canada	
Name of Additional Joint Inventor, if any:		<input type="checkbox"/> A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor						
Given Name (first and middle [if any])				Family Name or Surname				
Dale, R.		Cameron						
Inventor's Signature							Date	May 24/00
Residence: City	Rosemere	State	Que.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Country	Canada		Citizenship	CA
Post Office Address	493 de l'Erabliere							
Post Office Address								
City	Rosemere	State	Que.	ZIP	J7A 4M4	Country	Canada	
Name of Additional Joint Inventor, if any:		<input type="checkbox"/> A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor						
Given Name (first and middle [if any])				Family Name or Surname				
Else		Ghiro						
Inventor's Signature							Date	25 May 00
Residence: City	Laval	State	Que.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Country	Canada		Citizenship	CA
Post Office Address	768 Pierre							
Post Office Address								
City	Laval	State	Que.	ZIP	H7X 3L8	Country	Canada	

Burden Hour Statement: This form is estimated to take 0.4 hours to complete. Time will vary depending upon the needs of the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you are required to complete this form should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20231. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, DC 20231.

Case No. 13/068

COPY

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

Please type a plus sign (+) inside this box → +

DECLARATION

ADDITIONAL INVENTOR(S) Supplemental Sheet

Page 2 of 4

Name of Additional Joint Inventor, if any:		<input type="checkbox"/> A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor						
Given Name (first and middle [if any])			Family Name or Surname					
Nathalie		Goudreau						
Inventor's Signature	<i>Nathalie Goudreau</i>						Date	<i>May 24/00</i>
Residence: City	Mont-Royal	State	Que.	Country	Canada		Citizenship	CA
Post Office Address	416 Graham							
Post Office Address								
City	Mont-Royal	State	Que.	ZIP	H3P 2C9	Country	Canada	
Name of Additional Joint Inventor, if any:		<input type="checkbox"/> A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor						
Given Name (first and middle [if any])			Family Name or Surname					
Marc-Andre		Poupart						
Inventor's Signature	<i>Marc Andre</i>						Date	<i>May 24/00</i>
Residence: City	Vimont	State	Que.	Country	Canada		Citizenship	CA
Post Office Address	101 Aime Seguin							
Post Office Address								
City	Vimont	State	Que.	ZIP	H7M 1B3	Country	Canada	
Name of Additional Joint Inventor, if any:		<input type="checkbox"/> A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor						
Given Name (first and middle [if any])			Family Name or Surname					
Jean		Rancourt						
Inventor's Signature	<i>Jean Rancourt</i>						Date	<i>May 24/00</i>
Residence: City	Laval	State	Que.	Country	Canada		Citizenship	CA
Post Office Address	6400 de l'Aiglon							
Post Office Address								
City	Laval	State	Que.	ZIP	H7M 4W2	Country	Canada	

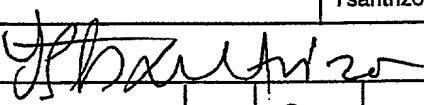
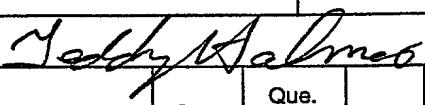
Burden Hour Statement: This form is estimated to take 0.4 hours to complete. Time will vary depending upon the needs of the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you are required to complete this form should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20231. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, DC 20231.

Case No. 13/068

COPY

Please type a plus sign (+) inside this box → +

DECLARATION**ADDITIONAL INVENTOR(S)
Supplemental Sheet**Page 3 of 4

Name of Additional Joint Inventor, if any:		<input type="checkbox"/> A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor						
Given Name (first and middle [if any])				Family Name or Surname				
Youla S.				Tsantrizos				
Inventor's Signature							Date	May 24/00
Residence: City	Saint-Laurent	State	Que.	Country	Canada		Citizenship	CA
Post Office Address	1590 Champigny							
Post Office Address								
City	Saint-Laurent	State	Que.	ZIP	H4L 4P7	Country	Canada	
Name of Additional Joint Inventor, if any:		<input type="checkbox"/> A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor						
Given Name (first and middle [if any])				Family Name or Surname				
Anne-Marie				Faucher				
Inventor's Signature							Date	May 24/00
Residence: City	Oka	State	Que.	Country	Canada		Citizenship	CA
Post Office Address	11 Lefebvre North							
Post Office Address								
City	Oka	State	Que.	ZIP	J0N 1E0	Country	Canada	
Name of Additional Joint Inventor, if any:		<input type="checkbox"/> A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor						
Given Name (first and middle [if any])				Family Name or Surname				
Teddy				Halmos				
Inventor's Signature							Date	May 24/00
Residence: City	Laval	State	Que.	Country	Canada		Citizenship	CA
Post Office Address	1935 Jean Picard #8							
Post Office Address								
City	Laval	State	Que.	ZIP	H7T 2K4	Country	Canada	

Burden Hour Statement: This form is estimated to take 0.4 hours to complete. Time will vary depending upon the needs of the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you are required to complete this form should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20231. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, DC 20231.

Case No. 13/068

COPY

Please type a plus sign (+) inside this box →

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

DECLARATION**ADDITIONAL INVENTOR(S)
Supplemental Sheet**Page 4 of 4

Name of Additional Joint Inventor, if any:		<input type="checkbox"/> A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor						
Given Name (first and middle [if any])				Family Name or Surname				
Dominik M.		Wernic						
Inventor's Signature	<i>Dominik M. Wernic</i>						Date	<u>May 25/00</u>
Residence: City	Laval	State	Que.	Country	Canada	Citizenship	CA	
Post Office Address	900 des Giroflees							
Post Office Address								
City	Laval	State	Que.	ZIP	H7X 3G5	Country	Canada	
Name of Additional Joint Inventor, if any:		<input type="checkbox"/> A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor						
Given Name (first and middle [if any])				Family Name or Surname				
Inventor's Signature							Date	
Residence: City		State		Country		Citizenship		
Post Office Address								
Post Office Address								
City		State		ZIP		Country		
Name of Additional Joint Inventor, if any:		<input type="checkbox"/> A petition has been filed for this unsigned inventor						
Given Name (first and middle [if any])				Family Name or Surname				
Inventor's Signature							Date	
Residence: City		State		Country		Citizenship		
Post Office Address								
Post Office Address								
City		State		ZIP		Country		

Burden Hour Statement: This form is estimated to take 0.4 hours to complete. Time will vary depending upon the needs of the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you are required to complete this form should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20231. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, DC 20231.

Case No. 13/068

COPY